

The Federal State Budgetary Educational Institution
of Higher Education
«Stavropol State Medical University»
The Ministry of Health of the Russian Federation

The Foreign Languages Department

Znamenskaya S. V., Pigaleva I. R., Znamenskaya I. A.

**LATIN
AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY**

Textbook for Foreign Medical Students
of the English Medium

Stavropol, 2017

УДК 807.1:37(07)
ББК 81.461я73
Z 80

Znamenskaya S. V. LATIN AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY. Textbook for Foreign Medical Students of the English Medium / Znamenskaya S. V., Pigaleva I. R., Znamenskaya I. A. – Stavropol. Publishing house: StSMU. – 2017. – 316 p.

ISBN 978-5-89822-510-0

Authors:

Znamenskaya S. V., Candidate of Pedagogics, Associate Professor, Dean of the Foreign Students' Faculty, Head of the Foreign Languages Department of Stavropol State Medical University of the Russian Federation Ministry of Health.

Pigaleva I. R., Candidate of Philology, senior teacher of the Foreign Languages Department of Stavropol State Medical University of the Russian Federation Ministry of Health.

Znamenskaya I. A., Candidate of Medical Sciences, Associate Professor of the Department of Hospital Therapy of Stavropol State Medical University of the Russian Federation Ministry of Health.

The textbook is designed for foreign students studying medicine in English. It includes the necessary theoretical and practical material on anatomical, clinical and pharmaceutical terminologies as well as Latin proverbs, quotations and medical phrases.

УДК 807.1:37(07)
ББК 81.461я73
Z 80

Reviewers:

Baturin V. A., Doctor of Medical Sciences, Professor, Head of the Department of Clinical Pharmacology of Stavropol State Medical University of the Russian Federation Ministry of Health.

Korobkeev A. A., Doctor of Medical Sciences, Professor, Head of the Anatomy Department of Stavropol State Medical University of the Russian Federation Ministry of Health.

Shibkova O. S., Doctor of Philology, Professor, Head of the Department of Foreign Languages for Natural Sciences and Economic Specialties of North-Caucasian Federal University of the Ministry of Education and Science.

*Recommended for publication by the Publishing Council
of Stavropol State Medical University*

ISBN 978-5-89822-510-0

© Stavropol State
Medical University, 2017

Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное
учреждение высшего образования
«Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет»
Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации

Кафедра иностранных языков

С. В. Знаменская, И. Р. Пигалева, И. А. Знаменская

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК И МЕДИЦИНСКАЯ ТЕРМИНОЛОГИЯ

Учебное пособие
для иностранных студентов-медиков
англоязычного отделения

Ставрополь, 2017

УДК 807.1:37(07)
ББК 81.461я73

Знаменская С. В. ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК И МЕДИЦИНСКАЯ ТЕРМИНОЛОГИЯ: учебное пособие для иностранных студентов-медиков англоязычного отделения (на английском языке) / сост.: Знаменская С. В., Пигалева И. Р., Знаменская И. А., – Ставрополь. Изд-во: СтГМУ. – 2017. – 316 с.

ISBN 978-5-89822-510-0

Авторы:

Знаменская С. В., кандидат педагогических наук, доцент, декан факультета иностранных студентов, заведующая кафедрой иностранных языков ФГБОУ ВО «Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет» Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации.

Пигалева И. Р., кандидат филологических наук, старший преподаватель кафедры иностранных языков ФГБОУ ВО «Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет» Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации.

Знаменская И. А., кандидат медицинских наук, доцент кафедры госпитальной терапии ФГБОУ ВО «Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет» Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации.

Учебное пособие предназначено для иностранных студентов, изучающих медицину на английском языке. Оно включает необходимый теоретический и практический материал по анатомической, клинической и фармацевтической терминологии, а также латинские афоризмы, специальные выражения, пословицы.

УДК 807.1:37(07)
ББК 81.461я73

Рецензенты:

Батурин В. А., доктор медицинских наук, профессор, заведующий кафедрой клинической фармакологии ФГБОУ ВО «Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет» Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации.

Коробкев А. А., доктор медицинских наук, профессор, заведующий кафедрой анатомии ФГБОУ ВО «Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет» Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации.

Шибкова О. С., доктор филологических наук, профессор, заведующая кафедрой иностранных языков естественнонаучных и экономических специальностей ФГАОУ ВО «Северо-Кавказский федеральный университет» Министерства образования и науки Российской Федерации.

Рекомендовано к печати редакционно-издательским советом СтГМУ.

ISBN 978-5-89822-510-0

© Ставропольский государственный
медицинский университет, 2017

THE INTRODUCTION

Latin language is a basis of studying and use of medical terminology not only in a higher educational institution, but also at the subsequent professional work, and means of perfection of the person of the future physician. The need to master a set of professional terms is underlined by the design and content of the present textbook. It is prepared according to the Program of medical higher schools in Latin language and medical terminology and includes three sections: terminology of morphological disciplines – anatomy and histology; terminology of a complex of pathological anatomy and clinical disciplines; pharmaceutical terminology with the nomenclature of medical products.

The first section *Anatomical Terminology* includes 18 units. Each unit contains the Grammatik Commentary explaining the basic points of Latin grammar. The Grammatik Commentary is followed by exercises for development of practical skills in reading, accenting syllables, doing English-Latin and back translation of terms. There are Vocabulary Extensions listing anatomy terms of frequent occurrence at the end of each unit.

The second section *Clinical Terminology* consists of 7 units which include general clinical terms signifying various aspects of diagnostic and therapeutic processes. The practical exercises will help our students to construct medical terms and give the definitions to the scientific notions, expressed through medical terms in English. The Vocabulary Extensions contain the most common clinical terms and Greek stems for deriving new words as well as Greek and Latin prefixes.

The third section deals with *Pharmaceutical Terms* and is arranged in 10 units including information about units commonly used in generic drug names, dosage forms, names of vegetation materials, medicinal herbs, medicines, names of chemical element, acids, oxides, salts and ethers. There is a list of most common prescription formulas. The practical exercises have a number of prescriptions in English to be translated into Latin.

The textbook also includes Tests after each Section, English-Latin-Russian Glossary and Latin-English-Russian Glossary, Appendix of Latin Proverbs, Quotations and Medical Phrases.

BRIEF HISTORICAL BACKGROUND OF LATIN

LATIN AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY – is a new subject, which is traditionally learned by the future doctors, pharmacists and representatives of other specialties. All of them know well the Latin proverb «*In via est in medicina via sine lingua Latina*» – «The way to medicine is impossible without Latin language».

Why are Latin and ancient Greek language of particular importance and applying for physicians and pharmacists? Why are Latin alphabet, phonetics and grammar used for spelling, pronunciation and functioning of modern medical terms?

To understand this it is necessary get to know the history of Latin.

Latin (*lingua Latina*) belongs to the Italic group of the Indo-European family of languages. Originally it was the native language of a small tribe *Latini* living in the central part of Apennines in the region called *Latium*. The capital was Rome founded in 753 B.C. In course of the time Latin became the state language of the great Roman Empire included till V A.B. all countries of Mediterranean basin, including territories of modern Italy, Spain, France, Greece and also a part of Britain, Germany, Hungary, Romania, Moldova and other countries. Latin alphabet is now used in all European countries.

Inscriptions are the first monuments of the Latin language. The oldest Latin inscriptions written in existence date from the VI century B.C., but inscriptions written earlier than about 200 B.C. are few and short. The earliest extant Latin literature is the comedies by Plautus (254-184 B.C.) and comedies by Terence (190-159 B.C.).

The Latin language of the classical time is presented by the remarkable works created in Rome during I century B.C. – at the beginning of I century A.D. One studies the classical Latin in higher educational establishments of humanities.

The period of the I–II centuries A.D. is called postclassical. The so-called Late Latin (III-IV centuries A.D.) is the last period of the Latin language. At the time of the late Empire, its downfall (476 A.D.) and the emergence of barbarian states the difference between the written Latin language, its literary and popular colloquial forms becomes wider. During this period, Christianity spreads in the region and the Christian literature appears. In the works by Hieronymus (340-420) and Augustine (345-430) and other late Latin authors we find a lot of morphologic and syntactic forms preparing the transition to the young Roman languages, which got this name from the main city of Romans: Rome – *Roma*, among them are such modern languages as Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Romanian, Moldavian and others.

The Latin language of the Middle Ages mainly remains the language of science. Teaching was conducted in Latin not only in primary schools, but also at Universities, which had appeared at that time in Europe.

Latin was used in contemporary literature, jurisprudence, diplomacy, Catholic Church service as well.

The outstanding scientists, philosophers, physicians of the European countries wrote and published their works in Latin during the movement of Renaissance in the XIV– XVI centuries. Tradition to write scientific works and

treatises in Latin remained until the second part of the XIX century.

At present, Latin is called a dead language, as it is no longer the means of communication, it exists in modern Roman languages, and it is widely used in terminology of all sciences and humanities.

OUTLINE OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY FORMATION

Medicine of Europe as an independent science began in Greece. Its founder was the greatest physician of ancient times Hippocrates (460–370 B.C.), so the whole system of medicinal terms was Greek too. It was further developed in the works of the Alexandrian school in Egypt, which made a number of important discoveries in the structure of the human body.

These are the works of Herophilus (the last third of the IV (fourth) century B.C.), who is considered to be the father of the descriptive anatomy, and Erasistrates (300–240 B.C.), who described cardiac and venous valves, intestinal peristalsis.

Doctor Aulus Cornelius Celsus (the end of the I (first) century B.C. – the first part of the I century A.D.), a Roman scientist, a person of encyclopedic knowledge, the author of the work «On Medicine» made a great contribution to the medicinal terminology. He introduced into the Roman medicine new Latin names of diseases. The most interesting fact was that he also used many traditional Greek terms in combination with their Latin equivalents. Later this duplication became a remarkable feature of the medical terminology.

Practicing physicians were mostly of the Greek origin that is why Greek borrowings took root in Latin very quickly. One of such doctors, Rufus Ephessian (I-II centuries A.D.), wrote in Greek a short manual for students «On Naming Parts of the Human Body».

Another author Dioscorides Kilikian (the second part of I century A.D.), being a physician in Rome, wrote the work «On Medical Substances», in which he described nearly 400 medicinal plants. It served a kind of a textbook on pharmacology for the whole Middle Ages.

Claudius Galen (129, 130, or 131–200 A.D.) was an outstanding doctor, anatomist, pharmacologist, and philosopher of Antiquity. Nowadays his name is associated with so-called the «Galen's Preparations». He compiled a dictionary and commentary to the works of Hippocrates and he was the author of such new terms as *thalamos*, *phlebs azygos*, etc.

One of the best medical schools of the Middle Ages – the Salernian, the first school in the West Europe, began to work in the IX century. It left a number of dietary and hygienic directions, which remain actually in our days.

Arabic scientists made a great contribution to the development of medicine in the Middle Ages mainly the remarkable physician of the East Ibn Sina

(Avicenna) (980–1037). His basic work «Canon of Medical Science» was translated into Latin in the XVIII century and was well known in the West.

The new rise and development of medicine is connected with the epoch of Renaissance. In 1478 in Florence, the work by Cornelius Celsus «Of Medicine» was published for the first time. The great Italian painter and scientist Leonardo de Vinci (1452–1519) studied the structure of the human body very attentively and left more than 200 anatomical drawings (sketches).

Andreas Vesalius (1514–1564), the great reformer of anatomy and medical terminology, lived in the first part of the XVI century. He is the author of the capital work «On the Structure of the Human Body» written in Latin and published in 1543. He taught anatomy in Latin too. Our modern anatomical terminology is inherited from the works of Vesalius, who used for the first time such Latin names as *atlas*, *scapula* etc. In the works of his pupil Fallopius one can find such terms as *tuba uterina*, *labyrinthus*, *placenta*, etc., which are included in the International Anatomical Nomenclature – *Nomina Anatomica*.

Such scientists, philosophers, physicians and doctors of European countries as Bartholomew Eustachius (1510–1574), Rene Descartes (1596–1650), Thomas More (1478–1535), Newton (1643–1727), Copernicus (1473–1543) and in the XVIII century botanist Charles Linney (1707–1778) and others wrote their works in Latin.

The contribution of Renaissance anatomists to the anatomical dictionary is great: about 700 names were inherited from the Greeks by the end of the XVIII century, the number of terms grew up to 30 000.

Progressive ideas of Vesalius came to Russia as early as the middle of the XVIII century. Epiphanies Slavinetzkii translated into the Slavonic language the short variant of anatomic works of Vesalius. The first Russian anatomical Atlas was published in 1774.

Among the Russian scientists and physicians of the XVIII–XIX centuries, who wrote in Latin, were M.V. Lomonosov (1711–1765), botanist N.M. Maksimovich-Ambodic (1744–1812), microscopist-histologist A.M. Schumlansky (1748–1795), his brother-clinician P.M. Schumlansky, the Great Russian surgeon N.I. Pirogov (1810–1881) and many others.

Nowadays the Latin and Greek languages serve the basis for creation of new medical terms, because the roots of the words are not associated with conversational practice and have definite special meaning and these roots are practically internationally known.

THE TERM

Any specialist must correctly understand and use the appropriate special vocabulary or terminology for successful work in any field of science, technique, and industry.

The main function of the term (in Latin «*terminus*» – *limit, boundary*) is to express exactly the appropriate scientific concept.

The term may be expressed by one word (e.g. *appendicitis, bone, chest*, etc.) and by a word combination (e.g. *arch of vertebra, transverse process, vertebral column*, etc.).

The term expresses the scientific and scientific-technical concept. The scientific concept is a result of scientific theoretical generalization and reflects a fragment of the scientific system of knowledge.

THE DEFINITION

Unlike ordinary concept, scientific concept has definition (or in Latin «*definitio*»). Some important signs of scientific concept are revealed in definition.

In special (terminological) encyclopedic dictionaries, terms have definitions (e.g. «*pneumonia*» is the *process of inflammation in the tissues of the lungs* that comes as independent disease or as complication of illness).

A specialist knows the main points of the scientific determination and may judge about it by definition, although both a specialist and not a specialist may use the same words and the same word combinations of the literary language (e.g. *pneumonia, tuberculosis, sclerosis*, etc.).

To know the main points of a scientific definition is to be able to use the given term in combination with other terms, and classify it in the system of definitions (terms) of this science.

In the definition associations and place in the system of definitions is revealed in some aspects only.

TERMINOLOGY – SYSTEM OF TERMS

Terminology of a definite field of science is a system of names, words and word combinations, which are used for expression of the scientific concept in the system of concepts, which are in a certain relation with each other. In contrast to other layers of dictionary, terminology is the subject of systematic regulation.

Terminology is in constant change: some words are changed, died; others are added and become unused. Many well-known special words get the new scientific meaning.

Terminology is a considerable organic part of language in the science and scientific literature.

SUBSYSTEMS OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Medical terminology is the «system of systems». It includes many terminological subsystems (medical, medical-biological and other scientific fields connected with medicine). There are three main subsystems using terms in Latin for naming objects and concepts:

- Anatomical and Histological Terminology,
- Clinical Terminology,
- Pharmaceutical Terminology.

Anatomical and histological terminology includes all the names of well-known anatomical and histological units. There is International Anatomical Nomenclature. *Parisiensia Nomina Anatomica* was primarily adopted in Paris at the 6-th international Congress of Anatomists in 1955 that is why it is abbreviated as PNA. Since then it has been corrected and supplemented. Now it includes more than 6000 of anatomical terms.

Besides, there is International Histological Nomenclature – *Nomina Histologica*, which was adopted in Leningrad at the 9-th International Congress of Anatomists, Histologists and Embryologists in 1970, that is why it is abbreviated as LNH. It is also corrected and supplemented regularly and includes nearly 3000 well-known histological terms. To use the nomenclatures in the right way it is necessary to pronounce the Latin terms correctly, to understand their grammatical form with or without a dictionary, to form the terms in Latin. That is why, as the ancient people said: «*Ad opus!* » – **Start working!**

SECTION I

ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

UNIT 1

THE LATIN ALPHABET

| <i>Printed letter</i> | <i>Name</i> | <i>Transcription</i> |
|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| A | a | [a] |
| Bb | be | [b] |
| Cc | tse | [ts; k] |
| Dd | de | [d] |
| Ee | e | [e] |
| Ff | ef | [f] |
| Gg | ge | [g] |
| Hh | ha | [h] |
| Ii | i | [i] |
| Jj | jot | [j] |
| K k | ka | [k] |
| Ll | el | [l] |
| M m | em | [m] |
| N n | en | [n] |
| Oo | o | [o] |
| Pp | pe | [p] |
| Qq | ku | [kv] |
| Rr | er | [r] |
| Ss | es | [s; z] |
| Tt | te | [t] |
| Uu | u | [u] |
| Vv | ve | [v] |
| Xx | iks | [ks] |
| Yy | ypsilon; i grek | [i] |
| Zz | zeta | [z; ts] |

You are already acquainted with the Latin letters studying English. Nevertheless, some of them are written and pronounced in another way. The word «*alphabet*» comes from the names of the first and second letters of the Greek alphabet. The Latin alphabet originates from the Greek.

In the classical period, it consisted of 23 letters, while now it includes 25 letters.

The letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The Latin alphabet consists of 6 vowels and 19 consonants.

The Vowels

The vowels are **a, e, o, i, u, y**. They are short and long, for example: *mālum* – *evil*; *mālum* – *apple*. The long vowels were pronounced twice as long as short ones. Now this difference is not observed, as it is not peculiar to modern languages. Nevertheless, the notion of length (a line over a letter) and brevity (a tick over a letter) is important for the stress (see below).

The letter **A a** is pronounced as [a], as in the English words «*father or footpath*», e.g.: *árcus* – *arch*.

The letter **E e** is pronounced as [e], as in the English words «*bed or pencil*», e.g.: *médius* – *middle*.

The letter **O o** is pronounced as [o], as in the English words «*not or frog*», e.g.: *cor* – *heart*.

The letter **I i** is pronounced as [i], as in the English words «*pit or kitten*», e.g.: *bis* – *twice* and represents not only a vowel sound, but also the semivowel sound like that of the English [j] in «*yet*». When this letter is used for the [j] sound, it is generally called a «*consonantal i*» and is sometimes written «*j*». This [j] sound is used in two cases:

1) Between two vowels, e.g.: *máior* – *greater*;

2) At the beginning of a word before a vowel, e.g.: *júgum* – *yoke*, *eminence*; *jejúnum* – *jejunum*. For this reason, the letter *j* was introduced into the alphabet in the 16-th century.

Note:

It is not used in words borrowed from Greek, e.g.: *Iódum* – *iodine*, *iáter* – *doctor*, etc.

In the 16-th century, the letter **U u** was introduced to denote a vowel-sound and is pronounced as [u], as in the English word «*full*». In earlier ages the letter **V v** represented both a vowel sound and a semivowel sound like that of the English [w], e.g.: *únus* – *one, single, the only one*.

In the times of Augustus, the letter **Y y** was introduced to be used in the words borrowed from Greek. Its French name «*i-grek*» literally means «*i taken from the Greek language*». In medicine, it is pronounced as [i], e.g.: *týmpanon* – *tambourine, drum*.

Combinations of Vowels

Besides single vowels, there are four combinations of vowels called *digraphs*, such as *ae*, *oe*, *au*, *eu*. Originally, all of them were diphthongs pronounced as one syllable. At present, the first two changed into monophthongs, while the other two remained diphthongs.

The digraph *ae* is pronounced as [e], as in the English word «*elephant*», e.g.: *cóstae* – *ribs*.

The digraph *oe* is pronounced in the same way, e.g.: *foétor* – *stench*.

Note:

1. If these letters are pronounced separately, two dots are put over the second letter (ë), but sometimes the sign of length may be put over it (ē), e.g.: *aër* – *air*, *poëta* – *poet*.

2. In writing the letters *a*, *o* are sometimes omitted in combinations of vowels *ae*, *oe*. In this case, it is necessary to put the sign of the length above the vowel (ē), e.g.: *peritonēum* = *peritonáeum*.

The diphthong *au* is pronounced as [au], as in the English word «*house*», e.g.: *auris* – *ear*.

The diphthong *eu* is pronounced as [eu], e.g.: *Europa* – *Europe*.

Note:

1. Sometimes, you can see the digraph *eu* at the end of a word. Nevertheless, this combination of vowels is not a true diphthong, because its vowels are in different syllables, e.g.: *mem-bra-ná-ce-us* – *membranous*.

2. Nowadays, the new combination of vowels *ou* appeared under the influence of Modern English. The digraph *ou* is pronounced as [u], e.g.: *croup*.

The Consonants

The letter **B b** is pronounced as [b], e.g.: *béne* – *well*.

In the classical period, the letter **C c** was pronounced as [k], e.g.: *Cáesar*, *córpus* – *body*. Moreover, in this way it must be pronounced by modern philologists, due to the Decree of the International Academy of the Latin Philology concerning its pronunciation. Nevertheless, in medicine it is pronounced in two ways:

1) As [k] before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*; and all the consonants or at the end of a word, e.g.: *cáput* – *head*; *córnu* – *horn*; *Cúprum* – *copper*; *lac* – *milk*; *crísta* – *crest*.

2) As [ts] in front of the vowels *e*, *i*, *y* or combinations of vowels *ae*, *oe*, e.g.: *cíto* – *quickly*; *céntum* – *hundred*; *cýtus* – *cell*; *cóena* – *dinner*; *plicae* – *folds*.

The letter **D d** is pronounced as [d], e.g.: *dens* – *tooth*.

The letter **F f** is pronounced as [f], e.g.: *flos* – *flower*.

The letter **G g** was formed in the 3-d century B.C. and is pronounced as [g], e.g.: *génu* – *knee*. The combination of letters **gu** before the vowels is pronounced as [gv], e.g.: *língua* – *tongue*, *language*.

The letter **H h** is pronounced as [h], e.g.: *hépar* – liver.

The letter **K k** is very rare. It remains only in a very few words, e.g.: *Kaléndae* (abbreviated *Kal.* or *K.*) – *calends*. In medicine, it is used only in Greek words such as *keratóma*, *leukaemia*, etc. or in the words borrowed from Arabic or other languages, e.g.: *Kálium*, *kala-azar*.

The letter **L l** always sounds mild in medicine, e.g.: *lámina* – thin plate, layer.

The letter **M m** is pronounced as [m], e.g.: *mórbus* – sickness, disease.

The letter **N n** is pronounced as [n], e.g.: *nómen* – name, appellation.

The letter **P p** is pronounced as [p], e.g.: *palatínus* – palatine.

The letter **Q q** was used only before the «consonantal u» (*quáero* – seek, search for). The combination *qu* is pronounced as [kv], e.g.: *áqua* – water.

The letter **R r** was called a dog's letter – *littera canína* – by the Romans and is pronounced as [r], e.g.: *rámus* – branch.

The letter **S s** is pronounced in two ways:

1) As [z] between two vowels and before the consonant *m* or after the consonant *n*, e.g.: *básis* – base; *ménsis* – month; *organísmus* – organism;

2) As [s] in most cases, e.g.: *súlcus* – groove, furrow; *óssa* – bones; *cósta* – rib.

The letter **T t** is pronounced as [t], e.g.: *túba* – tube. The combination of letters *ti* before the vowels is pronounced as [tsi], e.g.: *substántia* – substance; *articulátio* – joint, articulation. However, after the letters *s*, *x* the syllable *ti* is pronounced as [ti], e.g.: *míxtio* – mixture; *óstium* – mouth, entrance, opening.

The letter **X x** is pronounced as [ks], e.g.: *rádix* – root.

At the times of Augustus the letter **Z z** was introduced into the alphabet. In the Greek language, it was pronounced as [dz], e.g.: *Glycyrrhíza*. In the words borrowed from Greek, it is pronounced as [z], e.g.: *zóna* – zone; *zygomáticus* – zygomatic. In the words borrowed from other languages, it is pronounced as [ts], e.g.: *Zíncum* – Zinc. This word is borrowed from German.

NB! (Take notice!) The letter **W w** (*dubl ve*) borrowed from the modern languages is pronounced as [w] and used in a very few terms, e.g.: *ánuli Lóweri* – Lower's rings.

The Digraphs of Consonants

There are four combinations of consonants: *ph*, *th*, *ch*, *rh*. These digraphs are used in the words borrowed from Greek to represent the Greek letters: *phi*, *theta*, *chi* and *rho*.

Digraph *ph* is pronounced as [f], e.g.: *phálanx* – phalanx.

Digraph *th* is pronounced as [t], e.g.: *euthanasía* – euthanasia.

Digraph *ch* is pronounced as [h], e.g.: *chóle* – bile.

Digraph *rh* is pronounced as [r], e.g.: *rháphe* – raphe.

Note: The combination of consonants *sch* is pronounced as [sh], e.g.: *schizophrenía* – schizophrenia.

Winged Words

In the British and American lexicography, the term «winged words» is not used. The German linguist George Büchmann compiled the first dictionary of winged words in 1864. George Büchmann gave the name «geflügelte Worte» to *words, phrases and sentences, which came directly or indirectly from a literary or historical sources and which are commonly used in speech and writing as lexical units.*

- **Alma máter** — literally means «A feeding mother». It is usually applied to a university or academy in diminutive or humorous sense. These words come from the medieval students' appellation of a university supplying spiritual nourishment.

- **Académia** — «Academy». In modern languages, this word is used to indicate an institution of higher education. Actually, it originated from the Latin name of the Greek hero Academ. There was the sacred olive's grove around his grave (near Athens) where philosopher Plato gave lectures. It was in the IV century B.C. He founded the school, which he called «Academy» after Academ. This word came later to be applied to schools for higher education, usually for special purposes (e.g.: Academy of Sciences or Military Academy, etc.).

- **Cf. = cónfer** — «Compare with».

- **e.g. = exémpli grátia** — «For example, for instance».

- **etc. = et cétera** — «And other things: and so on; and the rest: and all the others».

- **i.e. = id est** — «That is to say; that is».

- **NB! = Nóta béne!** — The Latin phrase means «Take special notice», used for paying or drawing attention.

- **Salvéte, studéntes!** — A form of greeting students at a meeting.

- **Sálve, magístra (magíster)!** — A form of greeting a teacher at a meeting.

- **Vále, magístra (magíster)!** — A form of greeting a teacher by leave-taking.

- **Valéte, studéntes!** — A form of greeting students by leave-taking.

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or letters:

1. The letters ...and... are borrowed from Greek.
2. The letters ...and ...were introduced into usage in the XVI-th century.
3. The consonant-sound [h] is represented by the Latin letter ... and by the Greek combination of letters
4. The combination of letters **ti** before ... is pronounced as [tsi].
5. The letter ... is pronounced as [z] between two vowels and before the consonant ... or after the consonant...

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud paying attention to the pronunciation of the vowels and consonants:

| | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| ála | wing | крыло |
| artéria | artery | артерия |
| abdómen | abdomen, belly | живот |
| átlas | atlas (I cervical vertebra) | атлант |
| déxter | right | правый |
| infundíbulum | funnel | воронка |
| intestinális | intestinal | кишечный |
| pálma | palm | ладонь |
| gingíva | gum, gingival | десна |
| gýrus | convolution, gyrus | извилина |
| génu | knee | колени |
| membrána | membrane | перепонка |
| hómo | man, person | человек |
| hépar | liver | печень |
| húmerus | shoulder bone | плечевая кость |
| juvenílis | juvenile | юношеский |
| iódidum | iodide | иодид |
| fórnix | vault, fornix | свод |
| zóna | zone | зона |
| jejúnium | empty intestine | тощая кишка |
| juguláris | jugular | яремный |
| véna ázygos | azygous vein | непарная вена |
| índex | second finger, forefinger | указательный палец |
| úlna | elbow bone | локтевая кость |
| úvula | uvula | язычок |
| tíbia | tibia, shin bone | большеберцовая кость |

2. Read and explain the rules of pronunciation of the letters “i” and “j”:

| | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| intérnus | inner, internal | внутренний |
| infraspínátus | infraspinal | подостный |
| jejúnium | jejunum | тощая кишка |
| juguláris | jugular | яремный |

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| páries inférior | inferior wall | нижняя стенка |
| ínsula | island | островок |
| intestínium | intestine, bowel, gut | кишка |
| iáter | doctor | врач |
| júgum | ridge, eminence | возвышение |
| ligaméntum | ligament | связка |
| junctúra | junction | соединение |
| ilíacus | iliac | подвздошный |

3. Read and explain the rules of pronunciation of the letter “c”:

c [ts] – before e, i, y, ae, oe;

c [k] – before a, o, u, all consonants, at the end of the word.

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| accessórius | additional, accessory | добавочный |
| búcca | cheek | щека |
| búccae | cheeks | щёки |
| bíceps | biceps (muscle) | двуглавая мышца |
| cérebrum | cerebrum, brain | большой (головной) мозг |
| ceméntum | cement | цемент |
| cóllum | neck | шея |
| claviculáris | clavicular | ключичный |
| cávum cranii | skull cavity | полость черепа |
| cáput | head | голова |
| cávitas | cavity, hollow, pit | полость |
| céllula | cell | клетка |
| córpus | body | тело |
| cartilágo | cartilage, gristle | хрящ |
| fácies | face, surface | поверхность |
| lacrimális | lacrimal | слёзный |
| músculus | muscle | мышца |
| os coccýgis | coccygeal bone, coccyx | копчиковая кость |
| scápula | shoulder blade | лопатка |
| súlcus palatínus | palatal shallow/furrow | нёбная борозда |
| súlci palatíni | palatal furrows | нёбные борозды |
| trúncus | torso, trunk, body | туловище |
| vértebrae cervicales | cervical vertebrae | шейные позвонки |

4. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters “ss” and “s”:

s [s]

ss [s]

s [z] – between vowels,

– between vowel and a consonant “m” or “n”,
in the words of Greek origin.

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| mesentérium | mesentery | брыжейка |
| incisúra | incisure, notch | вырезка |
| séptum nási | partition of the nose | перегородка носа |
| stérnum | breastbone | грудина |
| fissúra | fissure, cleft, crack | щель |
| mucósus | mucous | слизистый |
| sinus | sinus, cavity | синус, пазуха |
| fóssa | depression, pit, hollow | ямка |
| impréssio | impression | вдавление |
| sigmoídeus | sigmoid | сигмовидный |
| nasolacrimális | nasolacrimal | носолезный |
| canális hypoglossális | sublingual duct | подъязычный канал |
| círculus venósus | venous circle | венозный круг |
| procéssus styloídeus | styloid process | шиловидный отросток |
| dens incisívus | incisor | резцовый зуб |
| pars petrósa | petrous part | каменистая часть |
| platýsma | subcutaneous muscle | подкожная мышца шеи |
| mesogástrium | mesogastrium | средняя часть живота |
| básis cránii | base of the skull | основание черепа |
| segméntum | segment | сегмент |
| chiásma | chiasm, crossing | перекрест |
| fissúra | fissure, cleft, groove | щель |

5. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters “x” and “z”:

x [ks]

z [z]

Exception: *Zincum, influenza* [ts]

| | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------------|
| índex | forefinger | указательный палец |
| fórnix | vault, arch | свод |
| pléxus | plexus | сплетение |
| maxilláris | maxillary | верхнечелюстной |
| os cóxae | hip bone | тазовая кость |

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| déxter | right | правый |
| rádix | root, radix | корень |
| fléxio | flexion, bending | сгибание |
| extérnus | external | наружный |
| púnctum fíxum | fixed point | точка прикрепления |
| lárynx | larynx | гортань |
| maxílla | upper jaw | верхняя челюсть |
| extrémitas | 1. extremity, limb; 2. end | конец |
| strátum zonále | zonal layer | поясной слой |
| zygomáticus | zygomatic | скуловой |
| véna ázygos | azygos vein | непарная вена |
| zóna orbiculáris | orbicular zone | круговая зона |
| trapézius | trapeziform | трапециевидный |

6. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the diphthongs:

| | |
|---------|---------|
| ae [e] | aë [ae] |
| oe [e] | oë [oe] |
| au [au] | eu [eu] |

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| pléura | pleural membrane | плевра |
| auriculáris | auricular | ушной |
| aponeurósís | aponeurosis, sheath | апоневроз |
| uropoéiticus | uropoetic | мочеобразующий |
| oedéma | dropsy, hydrops | отёк |
| áuris | ear | ухо |
| caécus | blind | слепой |
| vértebrae | vertebrae | позвонки |
| cóstae | ribs | ребра |
| córpus vesícae félleae | body of the gallbladder | тело желчного пузыря |
| pseudomembrána | false membrane | ложная мембрана |
| díploë | diploe | диплоэ |
| áër | air | воздух |
| haematopoéiticus | haematopoetic | кроветворный |
| régio glutaéa | gluteal area | ягодичная область |
| peronaéus | peroneal, fibular | малоберцовый |
| aurícula | auricle | ушная раковина |
| oesóphagus | gullet | пищевод |
| caudális | caudal | хвостовой |
| dýspnoë | shortness of breath | одышка |

7. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters “qu”, “ngu”, “gu»:

qu [kv]
ngu [ngv] – before vowels
 [ngu] – before consonants
gu [gu]

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| vértebra quinta | the fifth vertebra | пятый позвонок |
| quadrátus | square | квадратный |
| squáma occipitális | occipital scale | затылочная чешуя |
| aqu(a)edúctus | aqueduct, conduit | акведук, водопровод |
| línea oblíqua | oblique line | косая линия |
| squamósus | scaly | чешуйчатый |
| sublinguális | sublingual | подъязычный |
| ángulus | corner; angle | угол |
| inguinális | inguinal | паховый |
| língua | tongue | язык |
| língula | uvula | язычок |
| únguis | nail | ноготь |
| os tríquetrum | triangular bone | трёхгранная кость |
| sánguis | blood | кровь |
| sanguíneus | sanguineous | кровеносный |
| gústus | taste | вкус |
| gútta | drop | капля |
| Quércus | oak | дуб |

8. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters “ti”:

ti [tsi] – before vowels
 [ti] – after consonants “x” and “s”

| | | |
|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| articulátio | articulation, joint | сустав |
| addúctio | adduction | приведение |
| abdúctio | abduction | отведение |
| periodóntium | periodontal membrane | периодонт |
| tíbia | shin bone | большеберцовая кость |
| eminéntia | eminence | возвышение |
| masticácio | mastication | жевание |
| míxtio | mixture | смесь |
| óstium | entrance | отверстие, вход |

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| digéstiо | digestion | пищеварение |
| substántia spongiósa | spongy substance | губчатое вещество |
| intestínium | intestine | кишка |

9. Read paying attention to the pronunciation of the digraphs and combinations of letters:

| | ch [h] | ph [f] | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| | rh [r] | th [t] | |
| tubérculum pharyngéum | pharyngeal tubercle | | глоточный бугорок |
| os sphenoidále | wedge-shaped bone | | клиновидная кость |
| fóssa hypophysialis | hypophyseal hollow | | гипофизарная ямка |
| labyrinthus ethmoidális | ethmoidal labyrinth | | решетчатый лабиринт |
| hemisphérium | hemisphere | | полушарие |
| brónchus | bronchus | | бронх |
| núcha | nape of the neck, nucha | | задняя часть шеи, выя |
| sphíncter | sphincter (muscle) | | сфинктер |
| thyr(e)óideus | thyroid | | щитовидный |
| ischiádicus | ischiatric, sciatic | | подвздошный |
| chiásma | chiasm, decussation | | перекрест |
| thórax | breast, chest | | грудная клетка |
| rhomboídeus | rhomboid(al) | | ромбовидный |
| théa | tea | | чай |
| rhizóma | rhizome | | корневище |
| anaesthesia | anesthesia | | анестезия |
| splanchnológia | splanchnology | | спланхнология |
| dúctus cholédochus | common bile duct | | общий желчный проток |
| véna saphéna | subcutaneous vein | | подкожная вена |
| nódus lympháticus | lymph node | | лимфатический узел |
| artéria ophthalmica | ophthalmic artery | | глазная артерия |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| Latin | English | Russian |
| ala | ala, wing; | крыло; |
| anterior | anterior, front; | передний; |

| | | |
|---------------------|--|---|
| <i>arcus</i> | arch (arc); | дуга; |
| <i>caput</i> | head (of bones, internal organs); | голова, головка (костей, внутренних органов); |
| <i>cerebralis</i> | cerebral; | мозговой, относящийся к головному мозгу; |
| <i>collum</i> | neck (of bones, internal organs); | шея, шейка (костей, внутренних органов); |
| <i>columna</i> | column; | столб; |
| <i>corpus</i> | body; | тело; |
| <i>cranium</i> | cranium, skull; | череп; |
| <i>cranialis</i> | cranial; | черепной; |
| <i>crista</i> | crista, crest (ridge); | гребень; |
| <i>dexter</i> | dexter, right; | правый; |
| <i>distalis</i> | distal (distant); | дистальный, более удаленный от центра; |
| <i>dorsum</i> | dorsum, back; | спина, спинка; тыл; |
| <i>dorsalis</i> | dorsal (back); | дорсальный, спинной, тыльный; |
| <i>externus</i> | external; | наружный; |
| <i>foramen</i> | foramen (hole, opening); | отверстие; |
| <i>homo</i> | human (human being, man); | человек; |
| <i>horizontalis</i> | horizontal; | горизонтальный; |
| <i>inferior</i> | inferior, lower; | нижний; |
| <i>internus</i> | internal; | внутренний; |
| <i>lateralis</i> | lateral (sidelong); | латеральный, боковой; |
| <i>major</i> | larger, greater; | большой; |
| <i>medialis</i> | medial; | медиальный; |
| <i>medianus</i> | median; | срединный; |
| <i>medius</i> | middle; | средний; |
| <i>minor</i> | lesser; | малый; |
| <i>os</i> | bone; | кость; |
| <i>pars</i> | part; | часть |
| <i>posterior</i> | posterior (located behind or at the back); | задний; |
| <i>profundus</i> | profound, deep; | глубокий; |

| | | |
|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| <i>proximalis</i> | proximal (closest/nearest to the body); | проксимальный, ближайший к туловищу; |
| <i>sinister</i> | left; | левый; |
| <i>skeleton</i> (<i>sceleton</i>) | skeleton; | скелет; |
| <i>superficialis</i> | superficial (located on the surface); | поверхностный; |
| <i>superior</i> | superior, upper; | верхний; |
| <i>thorax</i> | thorax, chest; | грудная клетка; |
| <i>thoracicus</i> | thoracic; | грудной; |
| <i>truncus</i> | trunk; | туловище, ствол; |
| <i>ventralis</i> | ventral (front); | вентральный (передний); |
| <i>vertebra</i> | vertebra (a section of the backbone); | позвонок; |
| <i>vertebralis</i> | vertebral; | позвоночный. |

UNIT 2

ACCENT

Every word has as many syllables, as it has vowels or diphthongs: *re-a-ni-má-ti-o* (6 syllables) – *reanimation*, *oe-só-pha-gus* – *oesophagus*. In the division of words into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is written and pronounced with the following vowel: *a-lá-ris* – *alate*, *winged*. Doubled consonants are separated: *com-mis-sú-ra* – *commisure*.

Latin accent is dynamic. A syllable is pronounced at a higher musical pitch than the neighbouring syllables (pitch accent or musical accent), or with more force of the breath (stress-accent or «expiratory» accent). In Greek and some other Indo-European languages, it was mainly a pitch accent. In English and German, it is mainly a stress-accent. In the late and modern Latin, it is accentuated as in Russian.

Its position is bound up with the quantity of the Penult (the second from the word's end syllable).

The Basic Rules

A. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: *Ró-ma* – Rome, *á-la* – wing, *rá-mus* – branch, etc.

B. Words of more than two syllables are accented:

1) **On the Penult (second from the end syllable), if that is long:** *co-lúm-na* – column, *fo-rā-men* – opening, *car-ti lā go* – cartilage.

2) **On the Antepenult (third from the end syllable), if the Penult is short:** *sub-stán-ti-a* – substance; *cá-psu-la* – capsule, small box; *en-cé-phalon* – encephalon, brain.

In order to determine the position of the accent in a word, first of all, it is necessary to count the syllables, beginning from the end of the word, and then it is important to determine the length or brevity of the penultimate (second) syllable: *in-ci-sú-ra* (4 syllables) – notch.

Pay attention to the fact that *qu, ch, ph, th, rh* are counted as single consonants: *á-qua* (2 syllables) – water; *cho-lé-dō-chus* (4 syllables) – bilious; *é-lě-phas* (3 syllables) – elephant.

Note:

1. The diphthongs or monophthongs are one syllable too: *gan-gráe-na* (3 syllables) – gangrene; *cen-táú-rus* (3 syllables) – centaur.

2. The combination of vowels *eu* used at the end of a word is counted as two syllables: *cu-tá-ne-us* (4 syllables) – cutaneous.

The following are the main rules for determining the length of a syllable:

1. All syllables containing a diphthong (monophthong) or a sign of length are long by nature: *dí-aē-ta* – diet; *va-gī-na* – sheath.

2. All syllables containing long suffixes: *-ūr-, -īt-, -ōm-* for nouns or *-āl-, -ār-, -āt-, -ōs-, -ē-, -īn-*, (of Greek origin), *-iv-* for adjectives, are also long by nature: *tinctūra* – tincture; *frontālis* – frontal; *alāris* – alar; *serrātus* – serrate; *fibrōsus* – fibrous; *coccygēus* – coccygeal; *datīvus* – dative; *palatīnus* – palatine. (Exceptions: *serótīnus* – overdue, late; *trigémīnus* – trigeminal).

3. All syllables in which a vowel is before the letter *x* or *z*, before two or more consonants put together, are always long by a position: *reflēxus* – reflex; *Glycyrrhīza* – liquorice; *procēssus* – process, outgrowth.

The following are the main rules for determining the brevity of the penultimate syllable:

1. All syllables containing a sign of brevity are short by nature: *lámīna* – layer, coat; *túnica* – tunic.

2. All syllables, in which two vowels follow each other, are always short by a position: *fácies* – surface; *médīus* – middle.

3. All syllables containing short suffixes *-ōl-, -ūl-, -cūl-* for nouns or *-íc-, -ě-* (of Latin origin) for adjectives are always short by nature: *alveólus* – alveole; *fossūla* – small pit; *tubercūlum* – tubercle; *thoracīcus* – thoracic; *cartilaginēus* – cartilaginous.

4. All syllables, in which a vowel is before the Greek combination (*ch, ph, th, rh*) or before the consonant-groups, consisting of a mute letter (*p, b, t, d, c, g*) with the letters *l* or *r*, are always short by a position: *stómāchus* – stomach; *pálpebra* – eyelid; *philósophus* – philosopher; *triquétrus* – triangular.

There are also words to which we cannot apply the rules; the quantity of the vowel is shown in the dictionary form: *lamīna, forāmen, vagīna, aspēra*.

Winged Words

- **Alpha et omēga** — «Alpha and omega», i.e. «The beginning and the end». Alpha is the first letter in the Greek alphabet and omega is the last.
- **Amor patriae nostra lex** — «Love of the fatherland is our law».
- **Ars longa, vita brevis** — «Art (of medicine) is long, life is short». The Latin translation by Horace of a phrase from Hippocrates. The art referred to in the original aphorism was the craft of medicine, which took a lifetime to acquire.
- **Finis corōnat opus** — «All's well that ends well».

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or letters:

1. Only the...or...syllables can be stressed.
2. If there is a sign of length above the penultimate syllable, it is ...and
3. If there is a sign of brevity above the penultimate syllable, we stress the ... syllable.
4. In anatomical terminology the suffixes of nouns **-ol-**, **-ul-**, **-cul-** are ...and ...such as the suffixes of adjectives ...,
5. If a vowel of the penultimate syllable is before the Greek combinations ..., ..., ..., ..., we stress the ... syllable.

EXERCISES

1. Read two-syllable words:

| | | |
|--------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| ala | wing | крыло |
| atlas | atlas (I-st cervical vertebra) | первый шейный позвонок |
| arcus | arch | дуга |
| apex | apex, tip | верхушка |
| barba | beard | борода |
| bursa | pouch, sac | сумка |
| bulbus | bulb | луковица |
| costa | rib | ребро |
| collum | neck | шея, шейка |
| cauda | tail | хвост |
| cornu | corn, horn | рог, рожок |
| cavum | cavity | полость |
| femur | thigh bone | бедро |

| | | |
|---------|------------|------------|
| larynx | larynx | гортань |
| manus | hand | кисть руки |
| minor | lesser | малый |
| ramus | branch | ветвь |
| sella | saddle | седло |
| sternum | breastbone | грудина |
| vomer | vomer | сошник |
| vena | vein | вена |

2. Define whether the second (last but one) syllable is long or short and stress the following words:

| | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| arcus vertebrae | arch of the vertebra | дуга позвонка |
| cochlea | cochlea | улитка |
| corpus maxillae | body of the upper jaw | тело верхней челюсти |
| cerebrum | cerebrum, brain | большой (головной) мозг |
| ductus choledochus | bile duct | желчный проток |
| epigastrium | epigastric region, epigastrium | надчрежье |
| facies poplitea | popliteal surface | подколенная поверхность |
| ligamentum | ligament | связка |
| medulla ossium | bone marrow | костный мозг |
| membrum inferius | inferior limb (extremity) | нижняя конечность |
| patella | patella, knee-cap | надколенник |
| processus transversus | transversal process | поперечный отросток |
| periosteum | periosteum, periost | надкостница |
| palpebra superior | upper eyelid | верхнее веко |
| quadruplex | quadruple | четвертной |

3. Stress the words paying attention to the long and short syllables:

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| incisura vertebralis | vertebral notch | позвоночная вырезка |
| mentalis | mental (genial) | подбородочный |
| clavicularis | clavicular | ключичный |
| fossa pterygopalatina | pterygopalatine depression | крыло-нёбная ямка |
| forāmen spinosum | spinal opening | остистое отверстие |

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| sulcus pulmonalis | pulmonary furrow | легочная борозда |
| pars squamosa | scaly part | чешуйчатая часть |
| processus zygomaticus | zygomatic process | скуловой отросток |
| incisura supraorbitalis | supraorbital notch | надглазничная вырезка |
| incisura mandibulae | notch of the lower jaw | вырезка нижней челюсти |
| cribrosus | cribriform | решетчатый |
| pelvinus | pelvic | тазовый |
| glomerulus | glomerule | клубочек |
| pubicus | pubic | лобковый |
| foveolae granulares | minute pits | зернистые ямки |

4. Stress Latin terms. Pick out borrowings from Greek:

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| osteologia | osteology | остеология |
| trachea | trachea | трахея |
| gingīva | gum | десна |
| cartilagineus | cartilaginous | хрящевой |
| carpēus | carpal | запястный |
| alae vomēris | wings of the plowshare | крылья сошника |
| corpus mandibulae | body of lower jaw | тело нижней челюсти |
| peritonēum | peritoneum | брюшина |
| glutēus | gluteal | ягодичный |
| pylōrus | pylorus, pyloric orifice | привратник |
| glossopharyngēus | glossopharyngeal | языкоглоточный |
| orbīta oculi | orbit | глазница |
| orgānon gustus | organ of taste | орган вкуса |
| minīmus | least, smallest | наименьший |
| sinus maxillaris | maxillary sinus | верхнечелюстная пазуха |
| arcus vertebrae | arch of vertebra | дуга позвонка |
| lamīna medialis | medial plate | медиальная пластинка |
| vertebrae thoracicae | thoracic vertebrae | грудные позвонки |
| hiātus sacralis | sacral hiatus | крестцовая щель |
| nervus hypoglossus | sublingual nerve | подъязычный нерв |
| processus pterygoidei | wing-shaped processes | крыловидные отростки |

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| facies diaphragmatica | phrenic surface | диафрагмальная поверхность |
| regio inguinalis dextra | right inguinal region | правая паховая область |
| rete genus articulare | articular network of knee | коленная суставная сеть |
| pars nasalis | nasal part | носовая часть |
| apertura externa | external orifice (of) | наружная апертура |
| juga alveolaria | alveolar eminences | альвеолярные возвышения |
| apex partis petrosae | tip of petrous part | верхушка каменной части |
| margo linguae | edge of tongue | край языка |
| corpus maxillae | body of the upper jaw | тело верхней челюсти |
| canāles alveolares | alveolar canals | альвеолярные каналы |
| cauda pancreatis | tail of pancreas | хвост поджелудочной железы |
| lamīna horizontalis | horizontal plate | горизонтальная пластинка |
| os palatinum | palatine bone | нёбная кость |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>acromion</i> | acromion, outward extension (process) of the shoulder bone forming the point of the shoulder; | акромион (гребень лопатки); |
| <i>acromialis</i> | acromial; | акромиальный; |
| <i>articulatio</i> | articulation, joint; | сустав; |
| <i>articularis</i> | articular; | суставной ; |
| <i>brachium</i> | brachium, shoulder; | плечо; |
| <i>brachialis</i> | brachial; | плечевой; |
| <i>canālis</i> | canal; | канал |
| <i>cingulum</i> | cingulum, cincture, (girdle); | пояс; |
| <i>clavicula</i> | clavicle, collarbone; | ключица; |
| <i>clavicularis</i> | clavicular; | ключичный; |
| <i>coccyx</i> | coccyx; | копчик; |
| <i>coccygēus</i> | coccygeal; | копчиковый; |
| <i>costa</i> | rib; | ребро; |

| | | |
|---------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>costalis</i> | costal; | реберный; |
| <i>fissura</i> | fissure, narrow, deep, slitlike opening; | щель, борозда; |
| <i>forāmen</i> | foramen, opening for passage of blood vessels and nerves into and from a bone; | отверстие; |
| <i>fossa</i> | fossa: depression or cavity in bone; | яма, ямка (удлиненной формы); |
| <i>fovea</i> | fovea (a round hollow, pit); | ямка (округлая); |
| <i>humĕrus</i> | humerus (upper arm bone, shoulder bone); | плечевая кость; |
| <i>incisura</i> | incisure, notch; | вырезка; |
| <i>jugularis</i> | jugular; | яремный; |
| <i>mandibula</i> | mandible, lower jaw; | нижняя челюсть; |
| <i>maxilla</i> | maxilla, upper jaw; | верхняя челюсть; |
| <i>mandibularis</i> | mandibular; | нижнечелюстной; |
| <i>maxillaris</i> | maxillary; | верхнечелюстной; |
| <i>membrum</i> | member, limb, extremity; | член тела, конечность; |
| <i>olecrānon</i> | olecranon, process on the medial lower arm bone (ulna) which extends behind the elbow joint (elbow process); | олекранон (локтевой отросток); |
| <i>periosteum</i> | periosteum (strong, fibrous, vascular membrane covering the surface of a long bone except at the ends); | надкостница; |
| <i>pharyngeus</i> | pharyngeal; | глоточный; |
| <i>processus</i> | process; | отросток; |
| <i>radius</i> | radius, lateral lower arm bone; | лучевая кость; |
| <i>radialis</i> | radial; | лучевой; |
| <i>scapula</i> | scapula, shoulder blade; | лопатка; |
| <i>scapularis</i> | scapular; | лопаточный; |
| <i>thoracicus</i> | thoracic; | грудной; |
| <i>transversus</i> | transverse; | поперечный; |
| <i>tuber</i> | tuber, rounded process on a bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons; | бугор; |

| | | |
|-------------------|---|-----------------|
| tuberculum | tubercle, smaller rounded process on a bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons; | бугорок; |
| ulna | ulna, medial lower arm bone (elbow bone); | локтевая кость; |
| ulnaris | ulnar; | локтевой. |

UNIT 3

THE NOUN

All the words of the Latin language are grouped into different types of classes. This classification is based on three main principles:

- their grammatical meaning;
- their form;
- their syntactical characteristics.

In Latin, the noun is called *Nomen substantivum*.

The noun is a word expressing subject in the widest sense of the word. Thus nouns name things (*liber, libellus* – book; *os* – bone), living beings (*homo* – man; *Tigris* – tiger), places (*vallis* – valley), materials (*Ferrum* – iron; *oleum* – oil), processes (*vita* – life), state (*somnus* – sleep), abstract notions (*tristis, tristitia* – melancholy; *animus* – soul, mind) and qualities (*virtus* – courage), etc.

Grammatical Categories of Nouns

Morphologically nouns are characterized by the grammatical categories of number, case and gender.

The Latin nouns have three genders:

Genus masculinum – masculine gender;

Genus femininum – feminine gender;

Genus neutrum – neuter gender.

In the dictionary, the gender is designated by the letters *m, f, n*. The nouns cannot change their gender. The gender of the Latin nouns and those of modern languages may not coincide.

The Latin nouns that are inflected for number (*numerus*) have singular and plural forms. Singular (*numerus singularis*) denotes «one»; plural (*numerus pluralis*) denotes «more than one». In writing, you should give shortened forms – *Sing., Plur.*

Unlike English nouns in Latin are changed in cases and numbers. Case is a

grammatical category, which shows relation of the noun with other words in a sentence. It is expressed by the form of the noun.

There are six cases in Latin:

Nominative case (*Casus Nominatīvus*) answers the questions beginning with «Who? What? » and is the subject of the term.

Genitive case (*Casus Genetīvus*). The noun in this case answers the questions beginning with «Of what? Of whom? Which? Whose? » and is the object. The syntactical function of the genitive case is that of an uncoordinated attribute.

Dative case (*Casus Datīvus*). The noun in this case answers the questions beginning with «Whom ... for? What... for? Who... with? What... with? ».

Accusative case (*Casus Accusatīvus*). The noun in this case answers the questions beginning with «Whom? What? Where? Through which? ».

Ablative case (*Casus Ablatīvus*). The noun in this case answers the questions beginning with «By (with) whom? By (with) what? About who? About what? When? Where? Who ...with? What... with? ».

Vocative case (*Casus Vocatīvus*) is used to address somebody.

The Nominative and the Genitive are cases more commonly used in anatomical terminology. The Dative and the Vocative are cases not used in medicine except in the winged words. In writing, the word «casus» (case) may be omitted and you should give shortened forms, such as *Nom.*, *Gen.*

Declension of Nouns

The Latin nouns have five declensions, which differ in case endings. The declension is determined by the ending of the Genitive Singular (*Genetivus Singularis*), because in the Nominative Singular (*Nominativus Singularis*) the endings of different declensions may coincide.

| Declension | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|------------------------------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| Ending of the Genetivus Singularis | -ae | -i | -is | -us | -ēi |

The Dictionary Form of a Noun

The dictionary form of a noun is a form you can find in the dictionary. It includes three parts:

- 1) The form of the Nominative Singular (Nom. Sing.);
- 2) The ending of the Genitive Singular (Gen. Sing.);
- 3) Gender (m, f, n). E.g.: *tubercle – tuberculum, i n.*

Latin is one of the several inflected languages. Grammatical relations are mainly expressed by inflections of the word form, i.e. by the addition to the

stem of a word suffixes or endings. Thus, it is important to be able to determine the stem of a word.

The Stem of a Noun

The stem of a noun is a part of a word without ending. It needs to be determined for:

- Inflection of noun by numbers and cases;
- Formation of adjectives from nouns;
- Formation of clinical terms.

The stem of the nouns of the 1-st, 2-nd, 4-th, 5-th declensions may be defined in the Nominative Singular; we cut off the ending, because the stem of the Nominative and the Genitive cases is the same:

| <i>Dictionary form</i> | <i>Declension</i> | <i>Stem</i> | <i>Translation</i> |
|------------------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| ala, ae f | 1 | al- | wing |
| nasus, i m | 2 | nas- | nose |
| sternum, i n | 2 | stern- | breast bone |
| arcus, us m | 4 | arc- | arch |
| facies, ēi f | 5 | faci- | surface |

Nevertheless, sometimes the stem of the noun of the 2-nd declension with the ending **-er** in the Nominative Singular can be defined only in the Genitive Singular, because in this ending the letter «e» may be dropped in all oblique cases. Therefore, it is necessary to write the part of the stem in front of the ending of the Genitive case in the dictionary form, e.g.: **paediāter, tri m** – children's doctor (*pediadrīst*).

The stem is **paediatr-**.

If only the ending of the Genitive case is written in the dictionary form, it means that the stem of the Nominative and Genitive cases is the same, e.g.: **puer, ěri m** – child, boy, servant. The stem is **puer-**.

As a result of phonetic processes in the 3-d declension the stem in the Nominative Singular may be changed, that is why it can be determined only by the Genitive Singular by cutting off the ending **-is**, e.g.: **dens, dentis m** – tooth. The stem is **dent-**.

Thus in the dictionary form, the nouns of the 3-d declension are written with a part of the stem in the Genitive Singular, e.g.: **corpor, ĳris n** – body. The stem is **corpor-**.

Nevertheless, there are some words of the 3-d declension, which have the same stem in the both cases, such as: **auris, is f** – ear. The stem is **aur-**. For this reason, only the ending of the Genitive case is written in the dictionary form.

The sign of a grammatical gender of the Latin noun is the ending of the Nominative Singular.

So, all nouns with the endings **-um** or **-on** in the Nominative Singular are the neuter nouns of the 2-nd declension, e.g.: *septum, i n* – *septum*; *ganglion, i n* – *ganglion*.

NB! The words with the ending **-on** are borrowed from Greek, e.g.: *orgānon, i n* – *organ*.

All nouns with the ending **-u** in the Nominative Singular are also the neuter nouns, but they belong to the 4-th declension, e.g.: *genu, us n* – *knee*.

The nouns with the ending **-a** in the Nominative Singular are the feminine nouns of the 1-st declension, e.g.: *arteria, ae f* – *artery*.

The nouns with the ending **-men** in the Nominative Singular are the neuter nouns and they belong to the 3-d declension, e.g.: *abdōmen, īnis n* – *belly, abdomen*.

The nouns with the ending **-io** in the Nominative Singular are the feminine nouns of the 3-d declension, e.g.: *regio, ōnis f* – *region*.

The nouns with the ending **-us** in the Nominative Singular may be of different genders and declensions, as a rule, they are masculine of the 2-nd and 4-th declensions, and some are neuter and feminine of the 3-d declension, e.g.:

| The Nominative Singular | Ending of the Genitive Singular | Gender | Declension | Translation |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|------------|----------------|
| sulcus | -i | m | 2 | sulcus |
| ductus | -us | m | 4 | duct |
| corpus | -ōris | n | 3 | body |
| genus | -ēris | n | 3 | gender, origin |
| incus | -ūdis | f | 3 | anvil |
| senectus | -ūtis | f | 3 | old age |

It is necessary for students to learn by heart not only the Nominative case, but also the Genitive case.

Summary of inflections

| Declension | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|------------|-----|--------------------|-----------------|--------|-----|
| Gender | f | m n | m, f, n | m n | f |
| Nom. Sing. | -a | -us -um -er -on | various endings | -us -u | -es |
| Gen. Sing. | -ae | -i | -is | -us | -ēi |

There are some words which true meaning does not coincide with their formal sign of gender due to some unknown reason. Their lists should be memorized!

Collēga, ae m f – a partner in office, colleague;
virus, i n – virus;
diamēter, tri f – diameter;
periōdus, i f – period;
methōdus, i f – method;
humus, i f – earth;
bolus, i f – clay;
manus, us f – hand.

The Structure of Anatomical Terms

Every anatomical organ has its anatomical term, which may consist of:

1) One word. This is only a noun in singular or plural number, e.g.: *hepar* – liver; *pulmōnes* – lungs;

2) Two words. They are a noun with an attribute. In Latin, an attribute always follows the headword, but in English, it precedes the headword. The attribute may be coordinated (adjective) or uncoordinated (noun), e.g.: *columna vertebralis* – vertebral column; *cervix uteri* – neck of the uterus;

3) Verbose. This is a noun with some attributes, e.g.: *basis cranii externa* – external base of the skull; *sulcus nervi petrosi majoris* – sulcus of the greater petrosal nerve; *pars lateralis ossis occipitalis* – lateral part of the occipital bone.

NB! In the anatomical terminology, almost all terms begin with a noun in the Nominative case.

The Uncoordinated Attribute

In anatomical terminology, the uncoordinated attribute is used very often. It is expressed by a noun in the Genitive case and stands after another noun, e.g.: *collum costae*: «collum» is a headword in the Nominative Singular; «costae» is a noun in the Genitive Singular, i.e. **uncoordinated attribute**.

In this case, the direct translation into English is necessary: *neck of the rib*.

The Genitive case of the Latin noun is translated with the help of the preposition «of».

Nevertheless, sometimes, the uncoordinated attribute may be translated as an adjective into English. It is important to memorize these terms, e.g.: *fossa cranii* – cranial fossa:

«fossa» is a headword in the Nominative Singular; «cranii» is a noun in the Genitive Singular, which stands after another noun as an uncoordinated

attribute, and is translated into English as an adjective. In English terms, adjectives precede nouns.

NB! The term «*os coccygis*» is translated into English as one noun «*coccyx*». The word «*coccyx, coccygis m*» means «*cuckoo*». This term is literally translated as «*bone of cuckoo*». The ancient people called this bone so, because it resembled a cuckoo beak.

There are the anatomical terms with two uncoordinated attributes, e.g.: *crista colli costae*:

«*crista*» is a headword in the Nominative Singular;

«*colli*» is a noun in the Genitive Singular, which stands after another noun as an uncoordinated attribute;

«*costae*» is a noun also in the Genitive Singular as an uncoordinated attribute.

All three nouns are translated one after another into English. The nouns in the Genitive Singular are translated from Latin into English as **noun+of+noun+of+noun** – *crest of the neck of the rib*.

The Latin grammatical structure is different from that of English. The English ending of the Genitive is the same as that of the Nominative. However, in Latin the endings of the Nominative and the Genitive are different. In spite of this, the anatomical terms with two uncoordinated attributes in Latin and in English have direct word order.

Winged Words

- **Habitus aegrōti** — «The patient's outward appearance».
- **Ignorantia non est argumentum** — «Lack of knowledge is no excuse (ignorance is no argument) », Spinosa.
- **Modus vivendi** — «Mode of life, way of life».
- **Medica mente, non medicamentis** — «Cure with your knowledge rather than drugs».

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or endings:

1. The dictionary form of the noun includes three parts: the form of the ... case of the ... form; the ending of the ... case (for definition of the declension) and designation of ... (for co-ordination with ...).
2. The Latin nouns have ... declensions, which are defined by the ending of the ... case of the ... form.
3. The Latin nouns are changed in ... and
4. The Latin nouns of all three genders with the ending ... in the ... form of the ... case belong to the 3-d declension.

5. The nouns with the ending **-a** in Nominative Singular are the nouns of the ... declension.

6. In Latin, the uncoordinated attribute is expressed by the ... in ... case.

EXERCISES

1. State the declension of nouns:

| | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| thalāmus, i m; | tympānum, i n; | ostium, i n; |
| apex, ĭcis m; | sella, ae f; | pubes, is f; |
| sinus, us m; | species, ēi f; | genu, us n; |
| vertebra, ae f; | crus, cruris n; | paries, ētis m; |
| cornu, us n; | vena, ae f; | systema, ātis n; |
| encephālon, i n; | ductus, us m; | facies, ēi f; |
| textus, us m; | sulcus, i m; | arcus, us m; |
| dens, dentis m; | forāmen, ĩnis n; | tempus, ōris n; |
| digĭtus, i m; | scapula, ae f; | vestibulum, i n; |
| rete, is n; | recessus, us m; | urĕter, ēris m. |

2. Complete the Genitive Singular form:

| Declension | Nom. Sing. | Gen. Sing. |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| I | clavicula | clavicul... |
| II | acromion | acromi... |
| II | tuberculum | tubercul... |
| III | tuber | tuber... |
| IV | hiātus | hiat... |
| I | squama | squam... |
| III | dens | dent... |
| II | septum | sept... |
| V | facies | faci... |
| III | zygōma | zygomat... |
| III | femur | femor... |
| III | pecten | pectin... |
| III | os | oss... |
| V | superficies | superfici... |
| IV | genu | gen... |
| III | axis | ax... |
| II | oculus | ocul... |

3. Complete the dictionary form of the following nouns:

| | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|
| vertebra; | palatum; | meātus, us; |
| tuberculum; | incisura; | acromion; |
| ramus, i; | ductus, us; | processus, us; |
| mandibula; | encephālon; | lingua; |
| arcus, us; | sinus, us; | lamina; |
| cornu; | dorsum; | textus, us; |
| skelēton; | clavicula; | genu; |
| cerebrum; | septum; | brachium; |
| humērus, i; | ganglion; | retinaculum; |
| olecrānon; | nasus, i; | recessus, us; |
| cranium; | scapula; | tegmen; |
| concha; | oculus, i; | digītus, i; |
| fossa; | glandula; | labyrinthus, i; |
| malleolus, i; | angulus, i; | lingua; |
| vena; | frenulum; | dentinum; |
| collum; | papilla; | bucca. |

4. Define the gender, the declension and the stem of the nouns and memorize them:

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| calcaneus, i ... | calcaneus, heel bone |
| genu, us ... | knee |
| aorta, ae ... | aorta |
| abdōmen, īnis ... | abdomen, belly |
| scabies, ēi ... | scabies |
| meātus, us... | passage, meatus |
| plexus, us ... | plexus |
| septum, i ... | septum |
| rabies., ēi ... | rabies, lyssa |
| carpus, i ... | wrist, carpus |
| scapula, ae ... | scapula, shoulder blade |
| acetabulum, i ... | acetabulum, cotyloid cavity |
| cornu, us ... | horn |

5. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| arch of the aorta; | neck of the radius; |
| body of a vertebra; | base of the skull; |
| ligament of the atlas; | head of the ulna; |
| capsule of the ganglion; | crest of the vestibule; |

head of the phalanx;
 neck of the femur;
 tubercle of a rib;
 manubrium of the sternum;
 head of the fibula;
 tuberosity of the radius;
 body of the mandible;

vestibule of the nose;
 cavity of the larynx;
 apex of the patella;
 cavity of the nose;
 tip of the nose;
 surface of the cerebrum;
 tuber of the upper jaw.

6. Translate the following terms into Latin:

ligament of the tubercle of a rib;
 apex of the head of the fibula;
 crest of the neck of the rib;

ligament of the head of the femur;
 peduncle of the arch of a vertebra;
 surface of the head of the fibula.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|------------------------|--|--|
| <i>ala, ae f</i> | ala; | крыло; |
| <i>angulus, i m</i> | angle; | угол; |
| <i>aōrta, ae f</i> | aorta; | аорта; |
| <i>arcus, us m</i> | arch; | дуга; |
| <i>arteria, ae f</i> | artery; | артерия; |
| <i>alveolus, i m</i> | alveole; | альвеола, ячейка; |
| <i>brachium, i n</i> | brachium, shoulder; | плечо; |
| <i>bucca, ae f</i> | cheek; | щека; |
| <i>caput, itis n</i> | head (also of bones, internal organs); | голова, головка (костей, внутренних органов) |
| <i>cavum, i n</i> | cavum, cavity; | полость; |
| <i>cavitas, ātis f</i> | cavity; | полость; |
| <i>concha, ae f</i> | concha, shell; | раковина; |
| <i>costa, ae f</i> | rib; | ребро; |
| <i>corpus, ōris n</i> | body; | тело; |
| <i>cornu, us n</i> | horn; | рог, рожок; |
| <i>cranium, i n</i> | cranium, skull; | череп; |
| <i>crista, ae f</i> | crista, crest (ridge); | гребень; |
| <i>calcaneus, i m</i> | calcaneus, calcaneum; | пяточная кость; |
| <i>crus, cruris n</i> | crus (leg, shin, shank); | ножка, голень; |
| <i>digitus, i m</i> | digit, finger; | палец; |
| <i>ductus, us m</i> | duct; | проток; |

| | | |
|------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| <i>frenulum, i n</i> | frenulum (retaining band) of the tongue; | уздечка; |
| <i>genu, us n</i> | genu (knee); | колено; |
| <i>gingīva, ae f</i> | gum; | десна; |
| <i>humerus, i m</i> | humerus (shoulder bone); | плечевая кость; |
| <i>incisura, ae f</i> | incisure, notch; | вырезка; |
| <i>labium, i n</i> | lip; | губа; |
| <i>lamīna, ae f</i> | lamina (plate); | пластинка; |
| <i>ligamentum, i n</i> | ligament; | связка; |
| <i>linea, ae f</i> | line; | линия; |
| <i>lingua, ae f</i> | 1. tongue; 2. language; | язык; |
| <i>mandibula, ae f</i> | mandible, lower jaw; | нижняя челюсть; |
| <i>maxilla, ae f</i> | maxilla, upper jaw; | верхняя челюсть; |
| <i>meātus, us m</i> | meatus, passage, channel; | проход, ход; |
| <i>musculus, I m</i> | muscle; | мышца; |
| <i>manubrium, i n</i> | manubrium, presternum; | рукоятка; |
| <i>orbīta, ae f</i> | orbit (eye-socket, orbit cavity); | глазница; |
| <i>os, ossis n</i> | bone; | кость; |
| <i>patella, ae f</i> | patella, knee-cap, knee-pan; | надколенник; |
| <i>radius, i m</i> | radius; | лучевая кость; |
| <i>raphe, es f</i> | raphe, seam (tissue seam); | шов (на мягких тканях); |
| <i>scapula, ae f</i> | scapula, shoulder blade; | лопатка; |
| <i>septum, i n</i> | septum (dividing wall, partition); | перегородка; |
| <i>spina, ae f</i> | spine; | ось; |
| <i>sternum, i n</i> | sternum, breastbone; | грудина; |
| <i>sulcus, i m</i> | sulcus, furrow depression in the surface of the cerebral cortex; also called fissure; | борозда; |
| <i>sutura, ae f</i> | suture (a bone seam); | шов (костный); |
| <i>tuba, ae f</i> | tube; | труба; |
| <i>tympanum, i n</i> | ear-drum; | барaban; |
| <i>ulna, ae f</i> | ulna (elbow bone); | локтевая кость; |
| <i>vena, ae f</i> | vein; | вена; |
| <i>vertebra, ae f</i> | vertebra (a section of the backbone); | позвонок; |
| <i>vestibulum, i n</i> | vestibule, antrum, heelbone; | преддверие |

UNIT 4

THE ADJECTIVE

In Latin, the adjective is called *nomen adjectivum*. The adjective is a part of speech, which denotes a quality or state of a substance.

Adjectives fall into two groups – qualitative and relative. Qualitative adjectives denote properties of a substance directly (*albus, a, um* – white; *latus, a, um* – broad), etc.

Relative adjectives describe properties of a substance through relation to materials (*lignus, a, um* – wooden; *laneus, a, um* – woollen, etc.), to organs (*hepaticus, a, um* – hepatic; *gasiricus, a, um* – gastric), to place (*barbarus, a, um* – foreign, strange), to time (*annuus, a, um* – lasting a year, yearly), etc. Due to the number and the type of the gender endings, the adjectives are divided into two large groups.

The first group is the adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions.

They have three gender endings and are changed according to the 1-st and 2-nd declensions, like nouns having the same endings, e.g.: *longus, a, um* – long; *liber, ěra, ěrum* – free.

| Gender | Gender endings | Declensions | Examples |
|----------|----------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| m | -us, -er | 2 | longus, libĕr, dexter |
| f | -a, -(ĕ)ra | 1 | longa, libĕra, dextra |
| n | -um, -(ĕ)rum | 2 | longum, libĕrum, dextrum |

NB! In some feminine and neuter adjectives with the ending *-er* in Nominative Singular the letter «e» may be dropped and in all oblique cases too. Therefore, it is necessary to write the part of the stem in front of the endings of feminine and neuter genders in the dictionary form, e.g.: *right* – *dexter, tra, trum*. The feminine form defines the stem, if we cut off the ending *-a*, e.g.: *dextr-* is the stem.

The adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions are called so, because they are changed according to the 1-st and 2-nd declensions in accordance with their endings:

| Case | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter |
|------------|-----------|----------|---------|
| Nom. Sing. | long-us | long-a | long-um |
| Gen. Sing. | long-i | long-ae | long-i |

| | | | |
|-----------|---------|----------|----------|
| Nom. Sing | liber | libēr-a | libēr-um |
| Gen. Sing | libēr-i | libēr-ae | libēr-i |
| Nom. Sing | dexter | dextr-a | dextr-um |
| Gen. Sing | dextr-i | dextr-ae | dextr-i |

The 2-nd group is the adjectives of the 3-d declension.

The adjectives are called so because they are changed according to the 3-d declension. They may be of three kinds:

1) The adjectives with three gender endings:

E.g.: *paluster, tris, tre* – marshy, swampy (Gen. Sing. *palustris*);

celer, ěris, ěre – swift, quick, speedy (Gen. Sing. *celěris*).

The form of the Genitive Singular in these adjectives coincides with the form of the Nominative Singular of the feminine gender. There are no such adjectives in the anatomical terminology, but they can be found in pharmaceutical and clinical terms.

2) **The adjectives with two gender endings.** In the dictionary form they have one common form for masculine and feminine genders with the ending *-is* and the ending *-e* for neuter gender, e.g.: *frontalis, e* – frontal.

The form of the Genitive Singular of the adjective with two gender endings for all three genders coincides with the form of the Nominative Singular of the feminine and masculine genders.

3) **The adjectives with one gender ending.** The dictionary form of the adjective with one gender ending (*-ns, -s, -x, -r*) consists of the common form of the Nominative Singular for all three genders and the ending of the Genitive Singular with the part of the stem, e.g.:

permānens, ntis – permanence (the stem is *permānent-*);

teres, ětis – round (the stem is *teret-*);

biceps, ěpitis – bicipital, two-headed (the stem is *bicipit-*);

simplex, ěcis – simple (the stem is *simplic-*);

impar, ěris – impare (the stem is *impar-*).

There are no adjectives of the 4-th and 5-th declensions.

The stem of the adjective of the **3-d declension** as well as of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions is defined in the Genitive Singular with cutting of the ending:

| <i>Nom. Sing.</i> | <i>Gen. Sing.</i> | <i>Stem</i> | <i>Translation</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| salūber, bris, bre | salūbr-is | salubr- | healthy |
| vertebralis, e | vertebral-is | vertebral- | vertebral |
| simplex | simplic-is | simplic- | simple |
| permānens | permanent-is | permanent- | permanent |

The Coordinated Attribute

In Latin, the coordinated attribute is expressed by the adjective and by ordinal numerals and participles similar in forms with them. They agree in gender, case and number with nouns, which they modify.

NB! In Latin, the coordinated attribute stands after a noun, while in English the adjectives precede their headword.

In order to agree the adjective with the noun it is important to memorize the dictionary form of the noun and the adjective and it is necessary to coordinate an adjective with a noun in gender, case and number, e.g.: *palatine* (*canal, surface, bone*):

| | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| palatinus, a, um | canālis, is m | canālis palatin- us |
| | facies, ēi f | facies palatin- a |
| | os, ossis n | os palatin- um |

There are not any endings in English adjectives to express agreement with headword, but in Latin, the ending of an adjective is a sign of the grammatical agreement.

The declension of the nouns and adjectives may be **non co-ordinated**, e.g.: *temporal surface* – **facies temporalis**: the noun «*facies*» is of the 5-th declension and the adjective is of the 3-d declension; e.g.: *temporal process* – **processus temporalis**: the noun «*processus*» is of the 4-th declension and the adjective is of the 3-d declension.

Nevertheless, sometimes it may be the same, e.g.: *temporal bone* – **os temporale**. The both words are of the 3-d declension.

If there are several adjectives coordinated with one headword they have define position assignments. In Latin, the adjectives expressing relation to an organ or a part of a body precede the adjectives denoting size, colour, form, place or position. These assignments are fixed. In this case, a back word order is used in English, e.g.: **ramus cutaneus medialis** – *medial cutaneous branch*.

The adjectives are not separate by commas, because the adjective denoting size, form, etc. are related to the word combination.

E.g.: **ganglion cervicale medium** – *middle cervical ganglion*; e.g.: **ganglion cervicale superius** – *superior cervical ganglion*.

As a rule the terms with coordinated attributes are translated into English with the help of that part of speech, which is given in Latin, but using the back word order, e.g.: **nervus occipitalis tertius** – *third occipital nerve*. Ordinal numeral «*tertius*» is translated as «*third*»; the adjective «*occipitalis*» is translated as «*occipital*».

NB! The Latin term **os sacrum** is translated into English as one word «*sacrum*». The adjective **sacer, cra, crum** means «*sacred*». This term is literally

translated as «*sacred bone*». The ancient people called this bone so, because it was a tasty morsel of a sacrificed animal; by the way, it is the biggest, fattest and the last to decay.

Winged Words

• **Ars longa, vita brevis** — «Art (of medicine) is long, life is short». Seneca translated this quotation from Hippocrates into Latin.

• **Audiātur et altēra pars** — «Hear the other side». (A legal fairness principle).

• **Facies Hippocratīca** — «Hippocrates' face». This word combination is used to mean a face of a dying man. It is one of the medical expressions, which include the name of Hippocrates, the founder of medicine. It is known that Hippocrates was the first to describe a face of a man with signs of coming death in his work «Prognostic».

• **Tabūla rasa** — «Blank (scraped) board». Ancient Greeks and Romans wrote on waxed plates with sharpened sticks. The text was easy to rub, and this fact led to the figurative meaning of this expression «A foolish man».

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or endings:

1. If the adjective of masculine gender has the ending **-us** or **-er** in the Nominative Singular, in feminine gender it has the ending ..., in neuter gender it has the ending

2. If the adjective has two gender endings, the form of the Genitive Singular coincides with the form of the Nominative Singular of ... or ... genders.

3. The stem of the adjective with one gender ending is defined according to the form of the ... Singular, if we cut off the ending

4. The adjectives agree in ..., ... and ... with the nouns, which they modify.

5. The co-ordinated attribute is expressed by... and stands after ... in Latin.

EXERCISES

1. Read the words. State their Dictionary Form:

A.

Vertebra thoracica;

arcus vertebrae;

basis ossis sacri;

labium mediale lineae asperae;

sulcus sinus sigmoidei;

tuber maxillae;

arcus costalis;

glandula alveolaris simplex;

sinus maxillaris;

facies maxillae;

foramen vertebrale;

facies articularis;

tunīca mucosa linguae;
ductus biliferi;
os frontale;

processus articularis;
cornu sacrale;
crista sacralis.

B.

Corpus vertebrae thoracicae;
sinus petrosus;
sulcus sinus petrosi;
lamīna horizontalis ossis palatini;
lamīna orbitalis ossis ethmoidalis;

arteria temporalis media;
sulcus arteriae temporalis mediae;
os occipitale;
pars petrosa ossis occipitalis;
sinus trunci pulmonalis.

2. Make the following adjectives agree with the given nouns, translate them into Latin. Mind the word order:

A. Zygomatic (muscle, arch, bone); sphenoid (concha, bone, sinus); frontal (angle, suture, tuber, sinus, process, squama, bone); nasal (sinus, spine, bone); articular (process, face, tubercle); mastoid (process, notch); sciatic (tuber, notch, spine).

B. Alveolar (process, arch, prominence); infraorbital (canal, opening, sulcus); ethmoid (foramen, crest, labyrinth = labyrinthus, i m); mental (tubercle, protuberance, foramen, spine).

3. Write the adjectives in their dictionary form and define the declension:

intermedius, ..., ...

intermediate

lateralis, ...

lateral

niger, gra, ...

black

nasalis,...

nasal

asper, ěra, ...

rough

costalis,...

costal

4. Translate into Latin:

sacral vertebra;
gluteal tuberosity;
perforating branch;
sacral horn;
medial septum;

thoracic vertebra;
transverse septum;
round muscle;
mental tubercle;
deep branch;

lateral thoracic artery;
median sacral crest;
external occipital crest;
deep temporal nerve;
medial pterygoid nerve.

5. Agree the adjectives with the nouns:

vertebral (artery, foramen, canal); transverse (sinus, head, crest);
frontal (bone, angle, notch); right (lobe, ligament, artery);
palatine (bone, process, spine); internal (base, meatus, foramen).

6. Translate into English:

columna vertebralis; tuberculum articulare;
foramen palatinum; facies externa;
nervus vertebralis; canālis palatinus;
musculus transversus; processus transversus;
processus articularis; ligamentum transversum;
ramus dexter; arteria vertebralis.

7. Write in Nominativus Singularis and form Genetivus Singularis:

frontal bone; parietal bone;
pterygoid canal; occipital artery;
vertebral artery; middle temporal artery;
transverse sinus; zygomatic bone;
round ligament; sphenoid bone.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

Adjectives of the 1-st group (I, II Declensions)

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------------|---|----------------|
| A. | | |
| dexter, tra, trum | dexter, right; | правый; |
| obliquus, a, um | oblique; | косой; |
| osseus, a, um | osseous, bony; | костный; |
| palatinus, a, um | palatine; (referring to the palate/ roof of the mouth); | небный; |
| pterygoideus, a, um | pterygoid, wing-shaped; | крыловидный; |
| rectus, a, um | straight, upright; | прямой; |
| sinister, tra, trum | left; | левый; |
| thoracicus, a, um | thoracic; | грудной; |
| thyroideus, a, um | thyroid; | щитовидный; |

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|
| transversus, a, um | transverse; | поперечный; |
| venosus, a, um | venous; | венозный; |
| zygomaticus, a, um | zygomatic; | скуловой; |

B.

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| albus, a, um | white; | белый; |
| asper, ěra, ěrum | asperous (rough); | шероховатый; |
| coronarius, a, um | coronary; | венечный; |
| iliacus, a, um | iliac; | подвздошный; |
| liber, era, erum | free; | свободный; |
| niger, gra, grum | black; | черный; |
| ruber, bra, brum | red; | красный; |
| sacer, cra, crum | sacred, sacral; | крестцовый; |

C.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| durus, a, um | hard; | твердый; |
| mylohyoideus, a, um | mylohyoid; | челюстно- подъязычный; |
| palatoglossus, a, um | palatoglossal; | небно-язычный. |

Adjectives of the 2-nd group (III Declension)

Latin

English

Russian

A.

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--|
| alaris, e | alar; | крыльный; |
| cerebralis, e | cerebral; | мозговой, относящийся к головному мозгу; |
| cervicalis, e | cervical; | шейный; |
| ethmoidalis, e | ethmoid; | решетчатый; |
| frontalis, e | frontal; | лобный; |
| mandibularis, e | mandibular; | нижнечелюстной; |
| maxillaris, e | maxillary; | верхнечелюстной; |
| nasalis, e | nasal; | носовой; |
| occipitalis, e | occipital; | затылочный; |
| orbitalis, e | orbital; | глазничный; |
| sphenoidalis, e | sphenoid, wedge-shaped; | клиновидный; |
| temporalis, e | temporal; | височный; |

B.

| | | |
|----------------|------------|--------------|
| vertebralis, e | vertebral; | позвоночный; |
| jugularis, e | jugular; | яремный; |
| sacralis, e | sacral; | крестцовый; |

C.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| alveolaris, e | alveolar; | альвеолярный; |
| buccalis, e | buccal; | щечный; |
| dentalis, e | dental; | зубной; |
| infraorbitalis, e | infraorbital; | подглазничный; |
| mentalis, e | mental (referring to the chin); | подбородочный; |
| mollis, e | soft; | мягкий. |

Nouns**Latin****English****Russian****A.**

| | | |
|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| calcaneus, i m | calcaneus, calcaneum heelbone; | пяточная кость; |
| clavicula, ae f | clavicle, collarbone; | ключица; |
| condylus, i m | condyle; | мыщелок; |
| fascia, ae f | fascia; | фасция; |
| fonticulus, i m | fonticulus, fontanelle; soft spot (incomplete bone formation) between the bones of the skull of an infant; | родничок; |
| meniscus, i m | meniscus; | мениск; |
| nasus, i m | nose; | нос; |
| nucha, ae f | back of the neck, nape of the neck; | выя; |
| palātum, i n | palate; | небо; |
| talus, i m | ankle-bone, astragalus; | таранная кость; |
| tonsilla, ae f | tonsil, tonsilla; | миндалины; |
| vestibulum, i n | vestibule; | преддверие; |
| B. | | |
| fibula, ae f | fibula, calf-bone, peroneal bone; | малоберцовая кость; |

| | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| orgānum, i n; (orgānon, i n) | organ; | орган; |
| segmentum, i n | segment, section; | сегмент; |
| squama, ae f | squama, squame, scale; | чешуя; |
| tibia, ae f | tibia, hin-bone; | большеберцовая кость; |
| ulna, ae f | ulna, elbow bone; | локтевая кость; |
| C. | | |
| os, oris n | mouth; | рот; |
| porus, i m | pore; | пора, отверстие; |

UNIT 5

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Latin qualitative adjectives have three degrees of comparison as in English: *gradus positivus* – the positive degree (the adjective in the dictionary form); *gradus comparativus* – the comparative degree (a higher degree of a quality); *gradus superlativus* – the superlative degree (the highest degree of a quality).

Formation of the Comparative Degree of Adjectives

The comparative degree is formed by adding the suffix *-ior* for the masculine and feminine genders and the suffix *-ius* for the neuter gender to the stem of an adjective. Its equivalent in English is the suffix *-er*.

| Positive Degree | Stem | Comparative Degree | Translation |
|------------------|----------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| latus, a, um | lat- | latior (m, f), latus (n) | broader |
| ruber, bra, brum | rubr- | rubrior (m, f), rubrius (n) | redder |
| brevi, e | brev- | brevior (m, f), brevis (n) | shorter |
| simplex, ĩcis | simplic- | simplicior (m, f) simplicius (n) | simpler |

Irregular Degrees of Comparison

The adjectives with the meaning «*great, large, small*» form the degrees of comparison from different stems.

| Gradus positivus | Gradus comparativus |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| magnus, a, um | major, (m, f), majus (n) |
| parvus, a, um | minor (m, f), minus (n) |

The stem of the comparative degree coincides with the common form of the masculine and feminine genders of the Nominative Singular.

The adjectives in the comparative degree are changed according to the 3-d declension by adding the ending **-is** to the stem of an adjective.

| Case | Masculine | Feminine | Neuter |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Nom. Sing. | major | major | majus |
| Gen. Sing. | majōris | majōris | majōris |

In anatomical terminology, the comparative degree of these adjectives is usually used in anatomical units forming antonymous pairs, which are translated into English as «*greater; lesser*», e.g.:

forāmen ischiadicum majus — *greater sciatic foramen*;

forāmen ischiadicum minus — *lesser sciatic foramen*.

The positive degree is used in single anatomical units and is translated as «*great*» into English, e.g.: *forāmen (occipitale) magnum* — *great foramen*.

Defective Degrees of Comparison

The adjectives with the meaning «spacious»; (they are 4) have no positive degree. The adjectives *superior, ius; inferior, ius* are sometimes translated as «*upper, lower*».

| Positive Degree | Comparative Degree | Translation |
|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| ----- | anterior (m, f), ius (n) | anterior |
| ----- | posterior (m, f), ius (n) | posterior |
| ----- | superior (m, f), ius (n) | superior, upper |
| ----- | inferior (m, f), ius (n) | inferior, lower |

The adjectives in comparative degree are co-ordinated with a noun in gender, case and number.

In anatomical terms with several co-ordinated attributes, they occupy the last place in the Latin term; and we should translate the term into English from the end, e.g.: *incisura thyroidea superior* — *superior thyroid notch*.

Formation of the Superlative Degree of Adjectives

The superlative degree (except the adjectives with the ending *-er*) is formed by adding the suffix *-issim-* and the gender endings (of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions) *-us* (m), *-a* (f), *-um* (n) to the stem of an adjective in the positive degree.

Its equivalent in English is the suffix *-est*.

| Positive Degree | Comparative Degree | Superlative Degree | Translation of the Superlative Degree |
|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| latus, a, um | latior, ius | latissimus, a, um | the widest |
| brevis, e | brevior, ius | brevissimus, a, um | the shortest |
| simplex, ĩcis | simplicior, ius | simplicissimus, a, um | the simplest |

The superlative degree of the adjectives with the ending *-er* is formed by adding the suffix *-rim-* and the gender endings *-us* (m), *-a* (f), *-um* (n) to the form of the masculine gender of the Nominative Singular of an adjective in the positive degree.

| Positive Degree | Comparative Degree | Superlative Degree | Translation of the Superlative Degree |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ruber, bra, brum | rubrior, ius | ruberrimus, a, um | the reddest |

Irregular Degrees of Comparison

| Positive Degree | Comparative Degree | Superlative Degree |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| magnus, a, um | major, majus | maximus, a, um |
| parvus, a, um | minor, minus | minimus, a, um |

The superlative degree of the adjectives with the meaning «*great, large, small*» is formed from the different stems.

In anatomical terminology, the superlative degree of these adjectives is used very seldom and may be translated into English in various ways: as the comparative degree (*greater*) or the superlative degree (*least, smallest*) or it may be not translated. That is why it is necessary to memorize the most well known anatomical terms (see below).

Defective Degrees of Comparison

| Positive Degree | Comparative Degree | Superlative Degree |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ----- | anterior, ius | ----- |
| ----- | posterior, ius | ----- |
| ----- | superior, ius | suprēmus, a, um |
| ----- | inferior, ius | imus, a, um |

The adjective «*suprēmus, a, um*» is translated into English as «*highest*».

The adjective «*imus, a, um*» is translated into English as «*lowest*» and is used very seldom, e.g.:

linea nuchae suprēma – highest nuchal line;

arteria thyroidea ima – lowest thyroid artery.

The adjectives in the superlative degree are changed in the same way as the adjectives of the 1-st group.

Word Building

A great number of adjectives in Latin are formed from nouns with the help of suffixes. These adjectives may be of the 1-st, 2-nd or of the 3-d declensions.

In anatomical terminology, the majority of the adjectives of the 3-d declension with two gender endings are formed with the help of the suffixes **-al/ar-**. For formation of the adjectives from nouns, it is necessary first to define the stem of a noun.

If a stem of a noun ends on the letter «*l*», we add the suffix **-ar-**, then the endings **-is, -e**; e.g.: *clavicul* + **ar** + **is, e** – *clavicular*.

The suffix **-al-** is added to the stem of the nouns in the rest of the cases, then the endings **-is, -e** are added, e.g.: *cost* + **al** + **is, e** – *costal*.

The adjectives formed in this way acquired the meaning «*pertaining to ...*», e.g.: *pertaining to a clavicle* – *clavicularis, e*; *pertaining to a rib* – *costalis, e*.

The Latin adjectives with the suffixes **-al/ar-** are usually transliterated into English, e.g.: *synovialis, e* – *synovial*, *dorsalis, e* – *dorsal*.

Winged Words

· **A posteriōri** — «Based on practice». It literally means «coming from the posterior experience»; usually it is used in Latin.

· **A priōri** — «Independently of experience». It is usually cited in Latin.

· **Optimum medicamentum quies est** – «Peace is the best medicine» (the words of Celsus).

· **Omnium artium medicīna nobilissīma est** — «Medicine is the noblest of all arts».

· **Salus popūli – suprēma lex** — «The welfare of the people is the supreme law», said Cicero in his work «Of laws».

· «**Salus aegrōti – suprēma lex**», which means that «The well-being of the patient is the sacred law for doctors».

TEST YOURSELF

Fill the blanks with missing words:

1. The sign of the comparative degree of an adjective for the Masculine and Feminine genders is the suffix ..., for the Neuter gender is the suffix

2. The comparative degree is changed according to the ... declension, i. e. it has the ending ... in the Genitive Singular.

3. The dictionary form of the comparative degree consists of the common form for the ... and ... genders and the form for the ... gender of the ... Singular.

4. The sign of the superlative degree of an adjective is double consonants ... or

5 The adjectives in the superlative degree are changed according to the ... and ... declensions.

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following terms:

petrosal branch;
parietal lobe;
superficial vein;
spinous opening;
internal capsule;

thoracic fascia;
oval opening;
right scapula;
cutaneous vein;
profound vein;

superficial vein;
thyroid gland;
spinous process;
articular process;
vertebral opening.

2. Translate the nominations of bones:

ethmoid bone;
palatine bone;
lower jaw bone;
upper jaw bone;
radius;
temporal bone;
humerus;
elbow bone;
heel bone;
frontal bone;

occipital bone;
zygomatic bone;
lacrimal bone;
hyoid bone;
coccyx;
innominate bone/hip bone;
sacred bone;
nasal bone;
knee-cap;
trapezoid bone;

thigh bone;
calf-bone/
peroneal bone;
shin-bone;
ankle bone.

3. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

Palatine process of the lower jaw;
articular process of the vertebra;
jugular notch of the breast bone;
profound cervical lymphatic node;
transverse sinus of the pericardium;

left lumbar trunk;
right horn of the womb (uterus);
lateral condyle;
aperture of the frontal sinus;
round ligament of the womb.

B.

Articular face of the acromion;
lamina of the vertebra arch;

marrow of the thymus;
fibrous capsule of the thyroid gland.

C.

Soft palate;
hard palate;
nasal surface of the upper jaw;
perpendicular plate of palatine bone;
intermedial part of lip of the mouth;

median sulcus of tongue;
external dental epithelium;
accessory nasal cartilage;
middle nasal conch;
masseteric fascia
(massetericus, a, um).

profound vein of the face;
middle passage of the nose;

mucosa of the nose;
furrow of the radial nerve.

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

Posterior ethmoid opening;
front longitudinal ligament;
great palatine furrow;

great palatine opening;
front medial surface;
upper cervical ganglion.

B.

Front sacral opening;
upper posterior iliac spine;
lower articular process;

back gluteal line;
tonsil of the cerebellum;
front cutaneous branch;

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

Right branch of portal vein;
entrance of the lower hollow vein;
greater horn of hyoid bone;

process of the lower nasal conch;
sulcus of the greater petrosal nerve;
temporal face of the greater ala;

sulcus of the lower petrosal sinus;
crest of the greater tubercle;
lower dental arch;

muscle of the upper eyelid;
frenulum of the upper lip;
posterior artery of the brain.

B.

Maxillary process;
process of the lower nasal conch;
entrance of the upper hollow vein;
skeleton of the upper limb;

smaller ala of the sphenoid bone;
bottom of the urinary bladder;
anterior lobe of the cerebellum;
lower face of the tongue.

C.

Posterior ethmoid opening;
anterior longitudinal ligament;
greater palatine sulcus;

greater palatine opening;
frontal medial surface;
superior cervical ganglion.

6. Translate the following terms into Latin:

greater palatine canal;
lacrimal crest;
posterior ethmoidal foramen;
superior thyroid tubercle;

anterior gluteal line;
lesser horn;
inferior articular process;
inferior articular surface.

7. Write the following terms in Nominativus Singularis and form Genetivus Singularis:

lesser tubercle;
superior laryngeal nerve;
free upper limb;
lower lip;

greater petrosal nerve;
greater wing;
lower eyelid;
posterior segment.

8. Translate the following terms into Latin:

crest of the greater tubercle;
skeleton of the free lower limb;
sulcus of the lesser petrosal nerve;

artery of the posterior segment;
tubercle of the upper lip;
frenulum of the upper lip.

9. Translate the following terms into English:

ductus sublingualis major;
vena cava superior;
forāmen ethmoidale anterius;
musculus teres minor;

crista tuberculi minoris;
frenulum labii inferiōris;
ligamentum transversum acetabuli;
musculus transversus linguae;

palpebra superior;
tuberculum thyroideum inferius;
bursa musculi teretis majōris;
ostium venae cavae superiōris;

facies inferior cerebri;
processus zygomaticus maxillae;
cornu majus ossis hyoidei;
processus frontalis ossis zygomatici.

10. Translate the following anatomical terms into Latin, e.g.: anterior surface of the maxilla – facies anterior maxillae:

transverse nerve of the neck;
frontal process of the maxilla;
transverse muscle of the abdomen;
superior angle of the scapula;
transverse ligament of the atlas;
medial border of the scapula;

cutaneous nerve of the thigh;
inferior surface of the tongue;
medial surface of the cerebrum;
anterior surface of the patella;
posterior tubercle of the atlas;
pterygoid tuberosity of the mandible.

11. Translate the following terms into Latin, e.g. cecal foramen of the frontal bone -foramen caecum ossis frontalis:

frontal angle of the parietal bone;
mastoid branch
of the occipital artery;
nasal spine of the frontal bone;
pterygoid angle of the parietal bone;
external lip of the iliac crest;

temporal surface of the greater wing;
lesser horn of the hyoid bone;
lesser wing of the sphenoid bone;
jugular tubercle of the occipital bone;
superior branch of the inferior lobe.

12. Translate the following anatomical terms into Latin:

lowest lumbar artery;
long artery;
highest intercostal vein;
broadest muscle;
lowest thyroid artery;
longissimus muscle;

long bone;
highest thoracic artery;
broad fascia;
lowest splanchnic nerve;
broad ligament;
long process.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

Latin

English

Russian

A.

anterior, ius
auricularis, e
bulbus, i, m
bulbus oculi

anterior;
auricular;
bulbus, bulb;
eyeball, globe of the eye;

передний;
ушной;
луковица;
глазное яблоко;

| | | |
|-------------------|--|--|
| bursa, ae f | bursa, pouch (sac of fluid located at and round joints which act as cushions and reduce friction); | сумка; |
| cavus, a, um | hollow, sunken; | полый; |
| cerebellum, i n | cerebellum; | мозжечок; |
| cerebrum, i n | cerebrum; | большой головной мозг; |
| curvatura, ae f | curvature, bending; | кривизна; |
| dorsalis, e | dorsal; | тыльный, спинной, (задний), дорсальный; |
| encephālon, i n | encephalon, brain; | головной мозг; |
| facialis, e | facial; | лицевой; |
| ganglion, i n | ganglion; | ганглий, узел (нервный); |
| inferior, ius | inferior, lower; | нижний; |
| laryngēus, a, um | laryngeal; | гортанный; |
| magnus, a, um | great, large; | большой; |
| major, jus | greater; | большой; |
| maxīmus, a, um | greatest, biggest; | наибольший, наивысший; |
| medulla, ae f | medulla, marrow or inner portion; | мозговое вещество, мозг; |
| minor, us | smaller, lesser; | малый; |
| minīmus, a, um | minimal, smallest; | наименьший; |
| nervus, i m | nerve; | нерв; |
| nodus, i m | node, knot; | узел; |
| oculus, i m | eye; | глаз; |
| ostium, i n | mouth, entrance, small opening; | устье (вход, отверстие); |
| parietalis, e | parietal; | теменной; |
| parvus, a, um | small, little; | маленький; |
| pharyngēus, a, um | pharyngeal; | глоточный; |
| pleura, ae f | pleura, pleural membrane; | плевра; |
| posterior, ius | posterior; | задний; |

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| profundus, a, um superior, ius suprēmus, a, um thymus, i m | profound, deep; superior, upper; highest; thymus; | глубокий; верхний; наивысший; вилочковая железа, тимус; |
| urethra, ae f | urethra, the urinary tract, the tube leading from the urinary bladder to the external surface; | мочеиспускательный канал, уретра; |
| vena portae ventralis, e | portal vein; ventral; | воротная вена; вентральный (передний); |
| vesīca, ae f | bladder; | пузырь; |

B.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| cutaneus, a, um ischiadicus, a, um | cutaneous; ischiodic, ischiatic, sciatic; | кожный; седалищный; |
| latus, a, um longus, a, um mastoides, a, um squamosus, a, um trapezoideus, a, um urinarius, a, um | broad, wide; long; mastoid; squamous, squamosal; trapezoid; urinary; | широкий; длинный; сосцевидный; чешуйчатый; трапециевидный; мочевой; |

C.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| lacrimalis, e lingualis, e | lacrimal; lingual; | слезный; язычный. |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|

NB! Word combinations

concha nasalis suprēma – supreme turbinate bone;
 digitus minīmus – little finger, fifth finger;
 musculus adductor magnus – adductor magnus muscle;
 musculus glutēus maxīmus – greater gluteal muscle, gluteus maximus muscle; musculus glutēus minīmus – least gluteal muscle, gluteus minimus muscle;
 musculus scalēnus minīmus – minimus scalenus muscle;
 venae cordis minīmae – smallest cardiac veins.

UNIT 6

SUBSTANTIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

The process of converting adjectives and participles into nouns is called substantiation of adjectives or participles. That means that adjectives acquire characteristics of nouns and start functioning as nouns in a sentence. E.g.: *rich people – the rich*. This process gave rise to a number of words denoting intestines, coats/tunics. These words preserve the form of the gender of their original nouns where they were used as attributes.

In Latin, the names of all kinds of intestines are substantivized neuter adjectives. The implied noun is **intestīnum, i n** – intestine, e.g.: **rectum, i n** – *rectum (straight intestine)*.

There are two exceptions: the names of large intestine and small intestine are the word combinations with co-ordinated attribute, e.g.: **intestīnum tenue** – *small intestine*; e.g.: **intestīnum crassum** – *large intestine*.

INTESTINES

| Latin | English | Russian |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| intestīnum, i n | intestine | кишка |
| c(a)ecum, i n | cecum | слепая кишка |
| colon, i n | colon | ободочная кишка |
| duodēnum, i n | duodenum | 12-перстная кишка |
| ileum, i n | ileum | подвздошная кишка |
| jejūnum, i n | jejunum | тощая кишка |
| rectum, i n | rectum | прямая кишка |
| intestīnum tenue | small intestine | тонкая кишка |
| intestīnum crassum | large intestine | толстая кишка |

COATS/TUNICS

The names of all kinds of coats/tunics are substantivized feminine adjectives:

| Latin | English | Russian |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| conjunctīva, ae f | conjunctiva | соединительная оболочка глаза, конъюнктива |
| cornea, ae f | cornea | роговица, роговая оболочка глаза |
| decidua, ae f | decidua (deciduous coat) | отпадающая оболочка |
| mucosa, ae f | mucosa | слизистая (оболочка) |

ADJECTIVE COMPOUNDS

Adjective compounds are adjectives consisting of two or three roots. They are used to denote anatomic formations, either spreading from one organ to another or related to two organs. As a rule, when several roots are combined to make one adjective, the linking "o" is used.

E.g.: *nervus musculocutaneus* – *musculocutaneous nerve*
musculus brachioradialis – *brachioradial muscle*

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMERALS

| Arab Ciphers | Cardinal Numerals | Ordinal Numerals | Roman Ciphers |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 1 | unus, a, um | primus, -a, -um | I |
| 2 | duo, duae, duo | secundus, -a, -um | II |
| 3 | tres, tria | tertius, -a, -um | III |
| 4 | quattuor | quartus, -a, -um | IV |
| 5 | quinque | quintus, -a, -um | V |
| 6 | sex | sextus, -a, -um | VI |
| 7 | septem | septimus, -a, -um | VII |
| 8 | octo | octavus, -a, -um | VIII |
| 9 | novem | nonus, -a, -um | IX |
| 10 | decem | decimus, -a, -um | X |
| 11 | undecim | undecimus, -a, -um | XI |
| 12 | duodecim | duodecimus, -a, -um | XII |
| 13 | tredēcim | tetrius decimus | XIII |
| 14 | quattuordēcim | quartus decimus | XIV |
| 15 | quindēcim | quintus decimus | XV |

Ordinal numerals show the order of things in a series. In anatomical terminology, they are used in the names of fingers, toes and ventricles of the brain.

In anatomy, pairs of nerves, ribs, vertebrae, fingers, metatarsal bones are designated by Roman ciphers.

Ordinal numerals are co-ordinated and changed in the same way as the adjectives of the 1-st group (according to the 1-st and 2-nd declensions); e.g. *digitus quartus* – *fourth finger*.

PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

For specification of topography of the anatomical formation, prefixed adjectives are often used.

When a prefix is added to an adjective its dictionary form does not change, it is equal in its form to the unprefixed adjective.

The following prefixes are recommended to be memorized:

| The Greek and Latin Prefixes | Meaning | Examples |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| epi- | upon, on, above, over | epigastricus, a, um |
| hypo- | under | hypoglossus, a, um |
| infra- | below, inferior, under | infratemporalis, e |
| inter- | between | intervertebralis, e |
| intra- | within, inside, in | intracranialis, e |
| para- | near, beside, at, next to | paravertebralis, e |
| peri- | surrounding, around | periarterialis, e |
| post- | after, behind | postnatalis, e; postcentralis, e |
| pr(a)e- | before, in front of | praevertebralis, e |
| retro- | behind, back, at the back of | retromandibularis, e, retroperitonealis, e |
| semi- | half | semilunaris, e |
| sub- | under | submucosus, a, um |
| supra- | above, over | supramastoideus, a, um |
| syn-, sym- | together, with | sympathicus, a, um |

NB! Before the letters *h*, *p* and *m*, *syn-* becomes *sym-*.

Winged Words

• **Aliis inserviēdo consūmor** — «I burn serving others». This is the motto accompanying a flaming candle and serving an emblem of healing, used since the ancient time, just like the main emblem of healing – a cup with a snake.

• **Exītus letālis** — «A lethal (mortal) outcome».

• **Medicus curat, natūra sanat** — «The doctor cares [for his patient], nature heals [him] » or «Doctor cures, nature saves».

• **Per aspēra ad astra** — «By steep and toil some ways to the stars». (Seneca). The British Air force motto. It is used to mean, «Through toil to

victory; achieving one's aim, realizing one has cherished dream by overcoming all the difficulties».

- **Pro analýsi** — «For analysis».

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following terms into Latin; agree the adjectives with the nouns in Nominativus Singularis and form Genetivus Singularis:

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| eighth nerve; | third occipital nerve; |
| second perforating artery; | third ventricle; |
| second toe; | first perforating artery; |
| fifth metatarsal bone; | first metatarsal bone; |
| fourth ventricle; | fourth metatarsal bone. |

2. Build the adjectives matching the descriptions below using prefixes. State their Dictionary Form:

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| ‘Under the ribs’ | ‘Behind the pharynx’ | ‘Behind the nerve node’ |
| ‘Between the bones’ | ‘Above the collar bone’ | ‘Above the kidney’ |
| ‘Under a mucosa’ | ‘Inside the muscle’ | ‘Above the breastbone’ |
| ‘Under the eye orbit’ | ‘Under the lower jaw’ | ‘Near the nose’ |

3. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| The smallest gluteal muscle; | the biggest gluteal muscle; |
| the broadest muscle of the back; | the longest muscle of the chest; |
| the longest muscle of the neck; | the highest nasal conch. |

B.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Stylohyoid muscle; | molar tooth; |
| deciduous tooth; | upper canine tooth; |
| wisdom tooth (=late tooth); | tubercle of lower canine tooth; |
| lower incisor (tooth); | root of medial upper incisor tooth. |

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| upper cervical ganglion; | lower collateral elbow vein; |
| incision of the round ligament; | entrance of the lower hollow vein; |
| artery of the back segment; | small sternal muscle; |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| long muscle of the neck; | large curvature of the stomach; |
| fibrous capsule of the thyroid gland; | front horn of the spinal cord; |
| greater occipital opening; | front iliac bone; |
| front surface of elbow bone; | bottom of the urinary bladder. |

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Bottom of the stomach; | cardial entrance of the stomach; |
| gastroduodenal artery; | intestinal surface of the uterus; |
| longitudinal fold of the duodenum; | round ligament of the uterus; |
| right flexure of the colon; | bottom of the uterus; |
| horizontal part of the duodenum; | uterine tube; |
| ampoule of the rectum; | left ventricle; |
| muscular coat of the small intestine; | large round muscle; |
| sigmoid colon; | iliac tuber; |
| sacral flexure of the rectum; | iliac crest. |

B.

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Retropharyngeal lymph node; | stylopharyngeal muscle; |
| general iliac artery; | semilunar fold of the conjunctiva; |
| rectovaginal partition; | sternothyroid muscle. |

6. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| fundus of the stomach; | ampulla of the uterine tube; |
| neck of the gall bladder; | ventricle of the heart; |
| fundus of the uterus; | lobe of the thyroid gland; |
| body of the urinary bladder; | ventricle of the brain; |
| ampulla of the rectum; | apex of the urinary bladder. |

7. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| intestinal surface; | uterine tube; |
| serous membrane; | fibrous tunic; |
| internal capsule; | superficial fascia; |
| thyroid gland; | mucous coat; |
| muscular layer; | fibrous capsule. |

8. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| muscular layer of the stomach (2, 1, 3); | round ligament of the uterus; |
| mucous membrane of the stomach; | muscular layer of the colon; |

longitudinal fold of the duodenum;
sacral flexure of the rectum;

intestinal surface of the uterus;
superficial fascia of the perineum.

9. Translate into English:

tunica mucosa laryngis;
tunica muscularis pharyngis;
tunica mucosa linguae;
ligamentum transversum perinei;
tunica mucosa oesophagi;
tunica serosa peritonei;

tunica mucosa intestini tenuis;
tunica muscularis vesicae felleae;
tunica serosa vesicae urinariae;
tunica mucosa tubae uterinae;
tunica muscularis intestini tenuis;
capsula fibrosa glandulae thyroideae.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

Latin

English

Russian

A.

| | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| gastricus, a, um | gastric; | желудочный; |
| hyoideus, a, um | hyoid; | подъязычный (кость и др.) |
| hypoglossus, a, um | hypoglossal; | подъязычный (нерв и др.); |
| iliacus, a, um | iliac; | подвздошный; |
| intestinalis, e | intestinal; | кишечный; |
| mucōsa, ae f | mucosa; | слизистая (оболочка); |
| mucosus, a, um | mucous; | слизистый; |
| oesophāgus, i m | (o)esophagus; | пищевод; |
| oesophagēus, a, um | (o)esophageal; | пищеводный; |
| peritonēum, i n | peritoneum | брюшина; |
| peritonealis, e | peritoneal; | брюшинный; |

B.

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| anus, i m | anus; | задний проход; |
| anal, e | anal; | анальный; |
| flexura, ae f | flexura, flexure; | изгиб; |
| fundus, i m | fundus, bottom; | дно; |
| ovarium, i n | ovarium, ovary; | яичник; |
| perin(a)eum, i n | perineum; | промежность; |
| pylōrus, i m | pylorus; | привратник; |
| pyloricus, a, um | pyloric; | привратниковый; |
| sacrococcygēus, a, um | sacrococcygeal; | крестцово-копчиковый; |
| stylopharyngēus, a, um | stylopharyngeal; | шило-глоточный; |

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| tenuis, e | slender, slim; | тонкий; |
| truncus, i m | trunk; | ствол, туловище; |
| C. | | |
| infrahyoideus, a, um | infrahyoid; | подподъязычный; |
| sternohyoideus, a, um | sternohyoid; | грудино-подъязычный; |
| stylohyoideus, a, um | stylohyoid; | шило-подъязычный; |
| suprahyoideus, a, um | suprahyoid; | надподъязычный; |
| thyrohyoideus, a, um | thyrohyoid; | щитоподъязычный. |

N.B. Word combinations:

Nom. Sing. intestīnum crassum – large intestine

Gen. Sing. intestīni crassi

Nom. Sing. intestīnum tenue – small intestine

Gen. Sing. intestīni tenuis

Nom. Sing. vesīca fellea – gall bladder, bile cyst

Gen. Sing. vesīcae felleae

Nom. Sing. vesīca urinaria – urinary bladder

Gen. Sing. vesīcae urinariae

UNIT 7

REVISION OF UNITS 3-6

1. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin. The adjectives are translated as the nouns in the Genitive Singular, e. g.: cranial fossa – fossa cranii:

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| costal angle; | aortic arch; | scapular notch; |
| sternal angle; | costal groove; | nasal passage; |
| nasal cavity; | acetabular fossa; | aortic vestibule; |
| cerebral peduncle; | carpal groove; | lingual septum. |

2. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin.

Example: *sulcus of the vertebral artery – sulcus arteriae vertebralis:*

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| artery of the round ligament; | nerve of the pterygoid canal; |
| sulcus of the occipital artery; | sulcus of the transverse sinus; |
| artery of the pterygoid canal; | notch of the round ligament; |
| body of the sphenoid bone; | sulcus of the middle temporal artery. |

3. Translate into Latin:

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ligament of the atlas; | ligament of the knee; |
| angle of the scapula; | process of the maxilla; |
| nerve of the neck; | ligament of the acetabulum; |
| muscle of the tongue; | muscle of the abdomen. |

4. Translate the following anatomical terms into Latin. The adjectives are translated as the nouns in Gen. Sing., e.g.: cerebral vein – vena cerebri:

| | | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| nuchal line; | nasal partition; | nuchal ligament; |
| cardiac vein; | cerebral artery; | nasal passage; |
| aortic arch; | nuchal fascia; | cranial fossa. |

5. Translate these anatomical terms into English:

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| linea nuchae suprēma; | septum nasi osseum; | fossa cranii media; |
| meātus nasi communis; | linea nuchae superior; | fossa cranii posterior; |
| arteria cerebri inferior; | arteria cerebri anterior; | meātus nasi medius. |

6. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin. The adjectives «great, greater, large» are translated as «magnus, a, um» in these terms.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| great auricular nerve; | great cerebral vein; |
| large saphenous vein; | great cardiac vein; |
| adductor magnus muscle (3, I, 2); | great occipital foramen. |

7. Translate these anatomical terms into English:

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| ramus muscularis; | labium vestibulare; | cranium cerebrale; |
| sinus maxillaris; | septum femorale; | linea scapularis; |
| arteria angularis; | aorta abdominalis; | ligamentum dorsale; |
| fossa mandibularis; | incisura fibularis; | nervus facialis. |

8. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| branch of the great auricular nerve; | bursa of the broadest muscle; |
| tubercle of the anterior scalene muscle; | apex of the sacrum; |
| nerve of the external acoustic meatus; | base of the sacrum; |
| bursa of the greater gluteal muscle; | lateral part of the sacrum; |
| bursa of the least gluteal muscle; | auricular surface of the sacrum. |

9. Agree the following adjectives with the nouns. Translate the word-combinations into Latin:

Greater (ala, horn, head, sulcus, curvature, papilla); lesser (muscle, horn, fossa, curvature, ala); anterior (crest, sulcus, tubercle, hole); posterior (face, arch, ligament); lower (sinus, limb, artery, ligament); upper (limb, ganglion, incisure, foramen, process).

UNIT 8

CONTROL TESTS ON ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Fulfill the control tests in written form:

Variant 1

1. Translate the words into Latin. State their Dictionary Form:

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. part | 11. collarbone |
| 2. shoulder blade | 12. shin-bone |
| 3. ligament | 13. maxillary |
| 4. red | 14. breastbone |
| 5. upper | 15. ear-drum |
| 6. intestinal | 16. rib |
| 7. blind gut | 17. transverse |
| 8. small intestine | 18. hole/opening |
| 9. calf-bone/peroneal bone | 19. skull |
| 10. sacred/sacral | 20. left |

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. right jugular trunk | 6. frontal sinus |
| 2. articular process | 7. internal jugular vein |
| 3. arch of the vertebra | 8. nerve of the brain |
| 4. greater straight muscle of the head | 9. temporal face of the greater ala |
| 5. sulcus of the greater petrous nerve | 10. cutaneous ramus of the ulnar nerve |

Variant 2

1. Translate the words into Latin. State their Dictionary Form:

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. arch | 3. coccygeal |
| 2. middle | 4. tubercle |

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 5. line | 13. portal vein |
| 6. black | 14. hyoid |
| 7. ankle-bone | 15. uterine |
| 8. node | 16. greater |
| 9. urinary | 17. bulb |
| 10. bottom | 18. hollow |
| 11. straight | 19. lower jaw |
| 12. vestibule | 20. bone |

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. profound vein | 6. facial muscle |
| 2. left lumbar trunk | 7. nasal bone |
| 3. head of the humerus | 8. frenulum of the upper lip |
| 4. smaller ala | 9. process of the upper jaw |
| 5. broad ligament of the uterus | 10. lower horn of the lateral ventricle |

UNIT 9

THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

The First Declension

In Latin, the first declension is called *declinatio prima*.

Only the nouns of the feminine gender with the ending **-a** in the Nominative Singular and the ending **-ae** in the Genitive Singular belong to the 1-st declension.

In Plural, they have the ending **-ae** in the Nominative case and the ending **-arum** in the Genitive case.

Endings of the Cases

| Case | Ending | Example |
|------------------------|--------|-----------|
| Nominativus Singularis | -a | lamīna |
| Genetivus Singularis | -ae | lamīnae |
| Nominativus Pluralis | -ae | lamīnae |
| Genetivus Pluralis | -arum | laminārum |

The Genitive Singular and the Nominative Plural have the same ending **-ae**. These forms of words differ by their positions in terms. In terms, a word in the Genitive Singular is always placed after another noun, e.g.: *collum costae* – neck of a rib.

A noun in the Nominative Plural is the first in the term, e.g. *costae spuriae* – *false ribs*.

The Plural form in Latin corresponds to the ending **-s** in English, e.g.: *linea* – *line*; **lineae** – *lines*.

As to the adjectives of the 1-st declension, they are changed in the same way as the nouns of the 1-st declension.

Example of Declension

| Case | Ending | Example |
|------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | -a | zygomatīca, dextra, libēra |
| Genetivus Singularis | -ae | zygomatīcae, dextrae, libērae |
| Nominativus Pluralis | -ae | zygomatīcae, dextrae, libērae |
| Genetivus Pluralis | -ārum | zygomatīcārum, dextrārum, liberārum |

In English adjectives do not change. However, in Latin they change according to the nouns, they can be in Plural and Singular, in the Genitive and the Nominative cases.

E.g.: *transverse line* – **linea transversa**;

e.g.: *transverse lines* – **lineae transversae**;

e.g.: *sulcus of the auditory tube* – **sulcus tubae auditivae**.

The Second Declension

In Latin, the second declension is called *declinatio secunda*.

The masculine nouns with the ending **-us**, **-er** in the Nominative Singular and the endings **-i** in the Genitive Singular belong to the 2-nd declension.

In Plural, they have the ending **-i** in the Nominative case and the ending **-orum** in the Genitive case.

Endings of the Cases

| Case | Ending | Example |
|------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | -us, -er | sulcus, cancer |
| Genetivus Singularis | -i | sulci, cancri |
| Nominativus Pluralis | -i | sulci, cancri |
| Genetivus Pluralis | -ōrum | sulcōrum, cancrōrum |

The Genitive Singular and the Nominative Plural have the same ending *-i*. Words with this ending differ by their place in a term.

A noun in the Nominative Plural occupies the first position in terms, e.g.: *musculi linguae* – *muscles of the tongue*.

A noun in the Genitive Singular is on the second place in a term, e.g.: *bursa musculi* – *bursa of the muscle*.

The neuter nouns with the endings *-um, -on* in the Nominative Singular and the ending *-i* in the Genitive Singular also belong to the 2-nd declension.

In Plural they have the ending *-a* in the Nominative case and the ending *-orum* in the Genitive case.

Endings of the Cases

| Case | Ending | Example |
|------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | -um, -on | tuberculum, acromion |
| Genetivus Singularis | -i | tuberculi, acromii |
| Nominativus Pluralis | -a | tubercula, acromia |
| Genetivus Pluralis | -ōrum | tuberculōrum, acromiōrum |

As to the adjectives of the second declension, they change in the same way as the nouns of the 2-nd declension.

Examples of Declension of the Masculine and Neuter Genders

| Case | Ending | | Example | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|--|--|
| | m | n | m | n |
| Nom. Sing. | -us, -er | -um, -on | zygomaticus, dexter, libēr | zygomaticum, dextrum, libērum |
| Gen. Sing. | -i | | zygomatici, dextri, libēri | zygomatici, dextri, libēri |
| Nom. Plur. | -i | -a | zygomatici, dextri, libēri | zygomatica, dextra, libēra |
| Gen. Plur. | -ōrum | | zygomaticōrum, dextrōrum, liberōrum | zygomaticōrum, dextrōrum, liberōrum |

Pay attention to the adjectives with the ending *-er* in the Nominative Singular, remembering that in some of them the letter «e» is dropped in all oblique cases.

Winged Words

- **Casus extraordinarius** — «An extraordinary case».
- **Casus ordinarius** — «An ordinary case».
- **Dum spiro, spero** — «As long as I breathe, I hope».
- **Quot capita, tot sensus** — «So many heads, so many minds».
- **Repetitio est mater studiōrum** — «Repetition is the mother of learning».

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or endings:

1. The nouns of the 1-st declension in the Nominative Plural have the ending ... and the ending ... in the Genitive Plural.
2. The nouns of the 2-nd declension in the Nominative Plural have the ending ... for the masculine gender and the ending ... for the neuter gender, in the Genitive Plural all of them have the ending
3. The adjectives of the 1-st group in the Nominative Plural have the ending... for the masculine gender, the ending ... for the feminine gender and the ending ... for the neuter gender.

EXERCISES

1. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| ribs | fibers | fingers |
| branches | tubercles | fontanels |
| nodes | veins | muscles |
| ligaments | sutures | segments |
| wings | arteries | spaces |
| glands | lips | nerves |
| lines | organs | lobules |
| ganglions | spines | follicles |
| grooves | trunks | capsules |

2. Translate into Latin:

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| glands of the skin | arteries of the kidney |
| muscles of the neck | organs of the |
| folds of the colon | follicles of the larynx |
| ligaments of the knee | wings of the vomer |
| veins of the kidney | ligaments of the liver |
| lobes of the cerebrum | folds of the iris |
| glands of the uterus | follicles of the rectum |

veins of the neck
fascicles of the pons
nuclei of the pons
trunks of the plexus

fibers of the lens
muscles of the head
lobules of the liver
muscles of the larynx

3. The adjectives are translated as the nouns in the Genitive case, e. g. cerebral veins – venae cerebri. Translate into Latin:

cerebral arteries
cerebral sulci
abdominal veins
oral glands
dorsal muscles
skeletal muscles

cardiac veins
cerebral gyri
cerebellar veins
femoral veins
lingual veins
cranial sutures

4. Translate these anatomical terms into Singular and Plural:

pterygoid branch
false rib
true rib
thoracic vertebra

interosseous ligament
thoracic nerve
thoracic segment
thoracic ganglion

5. Translate into Latin:

Accessory organs of the eye; broad ligaments of the uterus (2, 1, 3); lymphatic follicles of the rectum; transverse veins of the neck; cruciate ligaments of the knee; arcuate arteries of the kidney.

6. Write in Nominativus Pluralis:

palatine grooves
transverse fascicles
palatine spines
transverse lines
accessory ligaments
transverse convolutions
interosseous muscles

pancreatic branches
interosseous spaces
accessory thyroid glands
transverse palatine folds
internal thoracic veins
gastric lymphatic follicles
right gastric lymph nodes

Memorize the following word combinations:

Nom. Sing. glandula mammaria – mammary gland;

Gen. Sing. glandulae mammae;

Nom. Sing. medulla oblongata – oblongatal medulla, oblongated marrow;

Gen. Sing. medullae oblongatae;

Nom. Sing. medulla spinalis – spinal marrow, spinal cord;

Gen. Sing. medullae spinalis;
Nom. Sing. nodus lymphaticus – lymph node;
Gen. Sing. nodi lymphatici.

UNIT 10

THE THIRD DECLENSION

In Latin, the third declension is called *declinatio tertia*.

Nouns of all three genders with the ending **-is** in the Genitive Singular belong to the third declension. In the Nominative Singular, their endings are different.

The stem of a noun of the third declension is defined according to the form of the Genitive case, if we cut off the ending **-is**.

The third declension is divided into three types; they are:

- consonant,
- mixed,
- vowel.

In order to define the type of the declension it is necessary, first, to count the syllables in the Nominative and Genitive cases and then to define the stem of a noun.

The nouns fall into two groups – *unequal* or *equal compound nouns*.

The nouns, which have one more syllable in the Genitive Singular than in the Nominative Singular, are called *unequal compound nouns (non-parisyllabic forms)*.

The nouns, which have the same quantity (number) of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive Singular, are called *nouns of the equal compound syllables (parisyllabic forms)*.

The stem of nouns can end on one, two, or three consonants.

Let us illustrate these rules:

E.g.: *corpus, corpōris n* – this word has two syllables in the Nominative Singular and three syllables in the Genitive Singular, thus it belongs to unequal compound nouns. The stem ends in one consonant.

E.g.: *canalis, canalīs m* – this word has three syllables in the Nominative and in the Genitive Singular; that is why it belongs to the equal compound nouns. The stem ends in one consonant.

E.g.: *dens, dentīs m* – this word has one syllable in the Nominative Singular and two syllables in the Genitive Singular; that is why it belongs to the unequal compound nouns. The stem ends in two consonants.

The following are the basic rules for determining the types of declension.

The consonant type includes the unequal compound nouns of all three genders with one consonant at the end of a stem.

The mixed type includes, primarily, the unequal compound nouns of three genders with two or more consonants at the end of a stem and, secondly, the equal compound nouns of feminine (masculine) genders with the ending **-is** in the Nominative Singular.

The vowel type includes only the neuter nouns with the endings **-e, -al, -ar** in the Nominative Singular.

The types differ by endings of the Genitive and the Ablative Plural.

One should remember that endings are added to stems!

Endings of the Cases

| | Consonant type | | Mixed type | | Vowel type |
|-------------------|----------------|----------|-------------|----------|------------|
| | m, f | n | m, f | n | n |
| Nom. Plur. | -es | -a | -es | -a | -ia |
| Gen. Plur. | -um | | -ium | | -ium |

Therefore, the word *corpus, ōris n* belongs to the consonant type; the words *canalis, canalis m* and *dens, dentis m* belong to mixed type.

Examples of Declension of Types

| | Consonant type | Mixed type | Mixed type | Vowel type |
|-------------------|----------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | n | m | m | n |
| Nom. Sing. | corpus | canālis | dens | rete |
| Gen. Sing. | corporis | canālis | dentis | retis |
| Nom. Plur. | corpora | canāles | dentis | retia |
| Gen. Plur. | corporum | canālium | dentium | retium |

NB! The word *vas, vasis n* has the endings of the 3-d declension in the Singular form, but it is remarkable by the fact that in the Plural form it has the endings of the 2-nd declension.

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Masculine nouns of the Third Declension may have one of the following terminations in the Nominative Case: **-o -os; -or; -es; -ex; -er**. The Genitive case form is used for defining the stem of the word. As has been mentioned earlier the stems differ in final letters or their combinations. In the table below the Nominative Singular terminations are contrasted to those of Genitive Singular preceded by the final letters differentiating word-stems.

Endings of the Masculine Nouns of the Third Declension

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. Sing. | -o | -os | -or | -es | -ex | -er |
| Gen. Sing. | -o/-i + nis | -or + is | -or + is | -t/-d + is | -ic + is | -r/-er + is |

NOTE. Nouns ending in **-es** may be either masculine or feminine. It depends on the fact whether the number of syllables in their Nominative Singular and Genitive Singular forms is different or similar. If it is similar the noun is feminine (*pubes, is f*). If it is different, the noun is masculine (*paries, etis m*).

Words exemplifying the above-stated peculiarities of Masculine Nouns of the Third Declension together with Exceptions are included in Vocabulary Extension.

MUSCLES NOMINATIONS ACCORDING TO THEIR FUNCTIONS

Muscles are nominated in three possible ways. They are named:

- according to their shape: *musculus rhomboideus* – *rhomboid muscle*;
- according to the anatomic formation they are related to: *musculus auricularis* – *auricular muscle*;

- according to their function. In this case, they are word combinations consisting of two nouns: the word *musculus* is on the first place and the name of the muscle indicating its function is on the second place. E.g.: *musculus extensor, musculus flexor*. Both words agree in number and case.

As to the English term, a muscle's name according to its function is on the first place, the word «*muscle*» is on the second one.

As a rule, the 1-st word is used in the abbreviated form (*m.*). The second word is always a masculine noun of the third declension with the ending **-or, -er** in the Nominative Singular (Gen. Sing. **-oris, -eris**).

Nom. Sing. *Musculus levātor, musculus massēter*

Gen. Sing. *Musculi levatōris, musculi massētēris*

The compound terms including names of muscles signifying their functions may be also complemented by subordinate nouns specifying their meaning. In this case, they have the following pattern: *m. levator scapulae* – (M. + Name of the Muscle + Subordinate Noun in the Genitive Case).

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Function Description</i> |
|--------------|----------------|--|
| m. abductor | abductor | muscle drawing a limb towards the body |
| m. adductor | adductor | muscle drawing a limb away from the body |

| | | |
|----------------|-------------|---|
| m. buccinātor | buccinator | muscle moving cheeks |
| m. constrictor | constrictor | muscle narrowing (e.g. pharynx) |
| m. depressor | depressor | muscle driving down |
| m. levātor | levator | muscle driving up/lifting |
| m. massēter | masseter | muscle for chewing |
| m. rotātor | rotator | rotating muscle (making a circular movement) |
| m. sphincter | sphincter | round contracting muscle |
| m. tensor | tensor | straining muscle |
| m. corrugātor | corrugator | wrinkling muscle |
| m. cremaster | cremaster | muscle lifting the testicle |
| m. dilatātor | dilatator | dilating muscle |
| m. extensor | extensor | extending muscle |
| m. flexor | flexor | flexing muscle |
| m. pronātor | pronator | turning the palm/foot face down |
| m. supinātor | supinator | turning the palm/foot face up |

Winged Words

- **Anamnēsis morbi** — «Present case history».
- **Anamnēsis vitae** — «Past history».
- **Finis corōnat opus** — «All's well that ends well».
- **O tempōra, o mores!** — «Oh what time, oh what habits!» (Cicero).

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or endings:

1. The ... compound nouns with ... consonant at the end of a stem are included into the consonant type.
2. The nouns of the vowel type of the third declension in the Nominative Plural have the ending ..., in the Genitive Plural they have the ending
3. The equal compound nouns with the ending... in the Nominative Singular and the ... compound nouns with ... or... consonants at the end of a stem are included into the ... type.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin:

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Palatine bone; | sulcus of the petrosal sinus; |
| parietal bone; | internal vertebral venous plexus; |
| frontal bone; petrosal sinus; | lateral pterygoid muscle; |
| facial muscle; | upper trunk of the brachial plexus; |
| peritoneum cavity; | broad ligament of the uterus; |
| bottom of the stomach; | upper cervical ganglion; |
| lower nasal passage; | greater straight muscle of the head; |
| anterior cerebrospinal artery; | lateral horn of the spinal cord. |

2. Translate into English:

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| forāmen zygomaticofaciale; | musculus palatopharyngēus; |
| musculus palatoglossus; | processus palatinus maxillae; |
| cavum nasi; | crista lacrimalis posterior; |
| plexus dentalis superior; | raphe pterygomandibularis; |
| collum mandibulae; | facies palatina lamīnae horizontalis. |

3. Find the stems (bases) of the following nouns:

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| pars, partis f; | ramus, i m; | tuber, ěris n; |
| ala, ae f; | plexus, us m; | foramen, ĩnis n; |
| nervus, i m; | cervix, icis f; | cartilago, ĩnis f; |
| genu, us n; | diaphragma, ātis, n; | tempus, ōris n; |
| magister, tri m; | canālis, is m; | facies, ěi f; colon, i n. |
| ligamentum, i n; | articulatio, ōnis f; | |

4. Make adjectives agree with nouns; put the resulting word combinations into Genetivus Singularis:

A.

Trochanter (major, jus; minor, us);
Paries (mastoideus, a, um; jugularis, e; anterior, ius);
Pulmo (dexter, tra, trum);
Pes (calcaneus, a, um; planus, a, um);
Liquor (cerebrospinalis, e; flavus, a, um);
Humor (aquosus, a, um; vitreus, a, um).

B. Exceptions!

Os, ossis n (sphenoidalis, e; hyoideus, a, um; occipitalis, e; sacer, cra, crum);

Tuber, ěris n (cinereus, a, um; frontalis, e; ischiadicus, a, um);
Mater, tris f (pius, a, um; durus, a, um; arachnoideus, a, um);
Cor, cordis n (adiposus, a, um; mobilis, e; pulmonalis, e).

5. Translate into Latin:

A.

Pulmonary face of the heart;
cortex of the lymphatic node;
greater and lesser trochanter;
cortex of the brain;
cortex of the cerebellum;
notch of the heart apex;

hyoid bone;
ethmoid furrow of the nasal bone;
cardiac notch of the left lung;
jugular wall of the tympanic cavity;
the right and the left lung;
anterior wall of the stomach.

B.

Belly of the muscle;
apex of the sacred bone;
pia mater of the brain;
front wall of the vagina;
branch of the sciatic bone;

apex of the posterior horn;
muscular coat of the stomach;
jugular wall;
membrane of the stirrup bone;
apex of the heart.

C.

Blind (= cecalis, e) foramen of tongue;
angle of mouth;
lateral surface of zygomatic bone;

vestibule of mouth;
temporal process of zygomatic
bone;
partition of the nose.

6. Translate into Latin using terms instead of descriptions:

A.

Muscle lifting the thyroid gland;
muscle rotating the thorax;
muscle rotating the neck;
muscle lifting shoulderblade;

muscle straining the broad fascia;
muscle dilating a pupil;
long radial muscle extending the wrist;
lower muscle narrowing pharynx.

7. Translate into English:

Musculus adductor pollicis (hallūcis);
musculus flexor digiti minīmi brevis;
musculus pronātor teres;

musculus sphincter ductus
choledochi;
musculus depressor septi nasi;
musculus rotātor cervicis;

musculus sphincter ani;
 musculus extensor indicis;
 musculus abductor digiti minimi;

musculus flexor pollicis longus.
 musculus massēter;
 musculus buccinātor.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--------------------|--|--|
| A. | | |
| apex, īcis m | apex, tip; | верхушка, кончик (носа, языка); |
| cortex, īcis m | cortex, bark; | кора, корковое вещество; |
| flos, floris m | flower; | цветок; |
| homo, īnis m | human, man; | человек; |
| index, īcis m | index, forefinger; | указательный палец (II палец); |
| humor, ōris m | humor, fluid, moisture; | влага, жидкость как составная часть тела; |
| liquor, ōris, m | liquor, liquid; | жидкость (спинно-мозговая); |
| paries, ētis m | paries, wall; | стенка; |
| pulmo, ōnis m | lung; | легкое; |
| trochanter, ēris m | trochanter, large process below the neck of the femur for muscle attachments; | вертел; |
| venter, ntris m | venter, abdomen, belly; | брюшко (мышцы), живот; |
| vertex, īcis m | vertex, crown of the head; | темя, вершина; |
| vomer, ēris m | vomer, plowshare; | сошник; |
| B. | | |
| pes, pedis m | foot; | 1) стопа (нога); 2) структура, подобная ножке; |
| pollex, īcis m | thumb; | большой палец руки; |
| stapes, ēdis m | stapes, stirrup bone; | стремя (стременная слуховая косточка); |
| urēter, ēris m | ureter; | мочеточник. |

EXCEPTIONS

Nouns of the Neuter Gender

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| os, oris n | mouth; | рот; |
| os, ossis n | bone; | кость; |
| cor, cordis n | hurt; | сердце; |
| tuber, ěris n | tuber; | бугор; |

Nouns of Feminine Gender

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|----------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| mater, tris f | 1) mother; 2) coat of the encephalon; | 1) мать; 2) мозговая оболочка; |
| pia mater | pia mater: thin, delicate, inner membrane of the meninges (soft coat); | мягкая мозговая оболочка; |
| dura mater | dura mater: outermost of the three membranes surrounding the brain and spinal cord (hard coat); | твердая мозговая оболочка; |
| arachnoidea | arachnoid membrane: the second (mater) layer around the brain and spinal cord; | паутинная мозговая оболочка; |
| gaster, tris f | stomach; | желудок. |

UNIT 11

FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

A number of typical terminations may help to distinguish the feminine nouns of the Third Declension. In the Nominative Singular, they have the following endings:

-do, -go, -io;

-vowels + s (exception: -os); consonants + s;

-vowels + x (exception: -ex); consonants + x;

In the table below you will find both the Nominative Singular endings as well as final letters of the Genitive Singular stem together with the Genitive Singular endings. The table shows that there are certain correlations between the Nominative Singular endings and stem types manifesting themselves in the Genitive Singular.

| Gender | Feminine | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|-----|-----|--------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Nom. Sing. | -do | -go | -io | -as | -es | -is | -us | -n/-r +s | -a/-i/-u +x | -n/-l +x | |
| Gen. Sing. | -din +is | -gin +is | -ion +is | -at +is | -is | -is | -t/-d +is | -t/-d +is | -nt/-rt +is | -ac/-ic/-uc +is | -ng/-lc +is |

Note 1. The stem of feminine nouns with different number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive Singular forms (non-parisyllabic forms) ending in **-is** in the Nominative ends in **-id-**: *iris, ĭdis f* (stem **-irid-**) as in *carōtis, ĭdis, f* (stem **-carotid-**); *pyrāmis, ĭdis, f* (stem **-pyramid-**). In feminine nouns with parisyllabic Nominative and Genitive Singular forms (having the same number of syllables) these forms are also identical as *auris, is f; cutis, is f*.

Note 2. The suffix **-io** may be added to verbal stems (supines) to derive nouns giving names to a number of actions, functions or processes: *supinatio* (turning the palm/foot face down), *pronatio* (turning the palm/foot face up), *flexio* (flexing), *extensio* (extending), etc. Names of many types of surgery are also nouns ending in **-io**: *amputatio pedis, resectio pulmōnis, resectio gastris*

Examples of Feminine Nouns of the Third Declension together with Exceptions are included in Active Words.

Winged Words

- **Omnia praeclāra rara** — «Everything which is beautiful is rare».
- **Praesente medīco nihil nocet** — «In the presence of a doctor nothing can harm».
- **Qui scribit, bis legit** — «Who writes, reads twice».
- **Similia similibus curāntur** — «Like cures like» (Samuel Hahnemann, founder of homeopathy).
- **Terra incognīta** — «An unknown country». This is the inscription on the ancient maps and terrestrial globes of unexplored areas. It also means «The unknown sphere of knowledge».

EXERCISES

1. Form Genetivus Singularis and name the derivational basis:

| | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|
| cavitas | impressio | asperitas |
| salus | pars | juventus |
| cervix | radix | fornix |
| tendo | articulatio | dens |
| tuberositas | longitudo | terminatio |

| | | |
|-----------|------------|--------|
| larynx | senectus | auris |
| lens | frons | pubes |
| cartilāgo | appendix | iris |
| cuspis | bifurcatio | unguis |

2. Make the adjectives agree with nouns; translate into Latin:

A.

Part (petrosal, medial, parietal, upper, anterior, pyloric, cardiac, lumbar, sternal, osseous, spongous, right, lateral, profound);

Canal (palatine, optical, lacrimal, facial, sacral, vertebral, carotic, greater, incisive);

Cavity (cerebral, pleural, articular, tympanic, proper);

Tuberosity (deltoid, iliac, masseteric);

Ear (middle, internal, external);

Cartilage (thyroid, articular, costal, alar, pterygoid, greater);

Joint (mandibular, transverse, simple, complex).

B.

Impression (renal, gastric, cardiac, duodenal, esophageal);

Edge (frontal, squamous, lacrimal, mastoid, anterior, free, right);

End (sternal, acromial, uterine, upper);

Tooth (incisive, deciduous, canine, molar, premolar, of wisdom);

Vessel (lymphatic, capillary, collateral);

Area (femoral, anterior, calcaneal);

Cusp (cuspis, ĩdis f) (posterior, ventral, anterior).

3. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

Free part of the lower limb;

facial area;

vault of pharynx;

bigger petrosal nerve canal;

abdominal part of the esophagus;

humeral joint;

nasal part of the pharynx;

tree of life of the cerebellum;

pyloric canal;

body of the pubic bone;

capsule of the pancreas;

tympanic cavity of the middle ear;

cartilage of the septum of the nose;

basis of the phalanx;

heel bone area;

hard coat of the encephalon.

B.

Canal of the cervix of the uterus;

upper aperture of the pelvis;

lateral surface of the testis;

root of the nail;

lower vault of the conjunctiva;

ciliary part of the retina.

C.

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Greater palatine canal; | root, back and apex of nose; |
| cartilage of partition of nose; | vestibular surface of tooth; |
| cavity of tooth; | medial upper incisor; |
| oral fissure (fissure of mouth); | infraorbital canal of upper jaw. |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION**Latin****English****Russian****A.**

| | | |
|----------------------|--|---|
| a. carōtis, tīdis f | carotid artery; | сонная артерия; |
| appendix, īcis f | appendix; | аппендикс, придаток, отросток; |
| articulatio, ōnis f | articulation, joint; | сустав; |
| auris, is f | ear; | ухо ; |
| basis, is f | basis; | основание; |
| cartilāgo, īnis f | cartilage; | хрящ; |
| cavitas, ātis f | cavity (cavum, i n); | полость, впадина; |
| cervix, īcis f | cervix, neck; | 1) шея; 2) шейка (матки, мочевого пузыря; |
| cutis, is f | cutis, skin; | кожа; |
| frons, frontis f | frons, forehead; | лоб; |
| gl. parōtis, tīdis f | parotid gland; | околоушная железа; |
| meninx, ngis f | meninx, coat of the brain; | мозговая оболочка; |
| pars, partis f | part; | часть;_ |
| radix, īcis, f | radix, root; | корень, корешок; |
| pelvis, is f | pelvis; | таз; |
| pelvis renalis | renal pelvis, pelvis of the kidney; | лоханка почечная; |
| pyrāmis, īdis f | pyramid; | пирамида; |
| regio, ōnis f | region, area; | область; |
| symphŷsis, is f | symphysis (connection/ junction of two bones by means of cartilage tissue); | симфиз (сращение); |
| synchondrosis, is f | synchondrosis (primary cartilaginous joint); | синхондроз; |

| | | |
|---------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| tuberositas, atis f | tuberosity: large, rounded process on bone; serves for attachment of muscles or tendons; | бугристость |
| B. | | |
| bilis, is, f | bile; | желчь; |
| extremitas, atis, f | end; | конец; |
| impressio, onis f | impression, mark; | вдавление; |
| iris, idis f | iris (the coloured part round the pupil of the eye); | радужка, радужная оболочка глаза; |
| lens, lentis f | lens (the transparent part of the eye behind; the pupil that focuses the light); | хрусталик; |
| phalanx, ngis f | phalanx; | фаланга, косточка, членник пальца; |
| pubes, is f | pubic region, pubic bone; | лобок. |

EXCEPTIONS

Nouns of the Masculine Gender

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-----------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| axis, is m | axis: (1) a line that divides a regular shape into 2 equal parts; (2) 2-nd cervical vertebra; | 1) ось; 2) II шейный позвонок; |
| canalis, is m | canal, channel; | канал; |
| dens, dentis m | tooth; | зуб; |
| margo, inis m | margin, border, edge; | край; |
| sanguis, inis m | blood; | кровь; |
| tendo, inis m | tendon, tendo; | сухожилие; |
| coccyx, ygis m | coccyx / os coccyges; | копчик; |
| fornix, icis m | fornix, vault; | свод; |
| larynx, ngis m | larynx; | гортань; |
| pharynx, ngis m | pharynx; | глотка; |
| thorax, acis m | thorax; | грудь, грудная клетка. |

Nouns of the Neuter Gender

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| pancreas, ātis n | pancreas, abdominal | поджелудочная железа; |
| vas, vasis, n | salivary gland; vessel; | сосуд. |

Adjectives of the 1-3 Declinations

| | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| canīnus, a, um | canine; | клыковый; |
| deciduus, a, um | decidual, milk (tooth); | молочный; |
| incisīvus, a, um | incisive | резцовый |
| molaris, e | molar, | большой коренной; |
| | multicuspid; | |
| premolaris, e | premolar, | малый коренной; |
| | bicuspid; | |
| serotīnus, a, um | late (about teeth); | поздний. |

UNIT 12

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Neuter nouns of the Third Declension may also vary both in their Nominative Singular terminations and in their Genitive Singular forms showing their stem types. The table below gives a clear idea of the endings in the Nominative Singular and their correlations in the Genitive Singular:

| Gender | Neuter | | | | | | | |
|------------|--------|--------------|-----|----------------|--------|--------|--------|-----|
| Nom. Sing. | -en | -us | -ur | -e | -l | -ar | -ut | -ma |
| Gen. Sing. | -in+is | -o/-e/-u+ris | -is | -il/-al +is | -ar+is | -it+is | -at+is | |

The table shows that there are certain correlations between the Nominative Singular endings and stem types manifesting themselves in the Genitive Singular.

NOTE 1. The stem of Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension ending in the Nominative Singular in **-us** ends in **-r**, while that of Feminine Nouns ends in **-t/-d**:

-ut-is, -ud-is f

-or-is, -er-is, -r-is n

NOTE 2. One should distinguish Latin neuter nouns of the third declension

ending in *-e* from Greek feminine nouns ending in *-e* (Genitive Singular ending *-es*). Compare: *rete, is n; raphe, es f; diploë, ës f*.

NOTE 3. One should also distinguish between Greek third declension neuter nouns ending in *-ma* and Latin first declension nouns ending in *-ma*. Compare *stroma, ës n* and *squama, ae f*.

The Neuter words of III Declension together with exceptions are listed in Active Words.

Winged Words

- **Ex oriente lux** — «From the East [comes] the light [i.e. culture] ».
- **Fiat lux!** — «Let there be light! »
- **Gratis** — «Free of charge».
- **Hygiēna amica valetudinīs** — «Hygiene is a friend of health».
- **In statu praesenti** — «In the present condition».
- **In statu quo ante** — «In the same condition as before».

EXERCISES

1. Build the Genitive Singular form. Find the stem of the word:

| | | |
|---------|---------|--------------|
| abdōmen | pus | fel (fellis) |
| nomen | sulfur | calcar |
| forāmen | femur | thenar |
| pectus | systema | caput |
| crus | zygōma | rete |

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Lower mediastinum; | cortex of ovary; |
| incisure of pancreas; | abdominal part of aorta; |
| broncho-esophageal muscle; | greater curvature of stomach; |
| basis of renal pyramid; | uterine end; |
| upper part of duodenum; | superior vault of conjunctiva. |

B.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Lateral region of the neck; | the longest muscle of the head; |
| upper constrictor of the pharynx; | anterior region of the face; |
| palatine aponeurosis; | membranaceous wall of the trachea; |
| mucosa of the mouth; | mastoid margin of the occipital bone; |
| body of the hyoid bone; | ala of the plowshare. |

C.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Cartilage of partition of nose; | lateral cartilage of nose; |
| buccal muscle; | free part of gum; |
| straight part of larynx; | neck of tooth; |
| root of upper canine tooth; | basis and body of lower jaw. |

3. Translate into Latin. Make adjectives agree with nouns:

Head (lateral, profound, oblique, transverse, long, short);
Glomus (carotid, coccygeal, aortal);
Crus (membranaceous, osseous, simple, medial, lateral, common (= communis, e),
right, left, short, long);
Foramen (great / occipital, mastoid, spinous, jugular, incisive, round, oval);
System (nervous, lymphatic, urogenital);
Body (ciliary, cavernous);
Kidney (right, left; cystic; mobile);
Net (arterial; palmar; articular).

4. Derive adjectives of the 1-st group from nouns using:

a) The suffix *-ic(us)*:

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Pubes, is f; | pylōrus, i m; | urēter, ēris m; |
| trochanter, eris m; | pancreas, atis n; | hepar, ātis n; |
| massēter, ēris m; | carōtis, īdis f; | diaphragma, ātis n; |
| gaster, tris f; | pectus, ōris n; | pelvis, is f. |

b) The suffix *-e(us)*:

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| larynx, ngis m; | tendo, īnis m; | metacarpus, i m; |
| pharynx, ngis m; | cartilāgo, īnis f; | coccyx, ýgis m. |

5. Derive the adjectives of the 2-nd group using the suffix *-al*:

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| sternum, i n; | margo, īnis m; | peritonēum, i n; |
| frons, frontis f; | os, oris n; | tempus, ōris n; |
| pulmo, ōnis m; | dens, dentis m; | lien, ēnis m; |
| occīput, ītis n; | abdōmen, īnis n; | ren, renis m; |
| apex, īcis m; | paries, ītis m; | cortex, īcis m. |

6. Translate the following terms into Latin:

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pyloric part of the stomach; | body of the shin-bone; |
| wing of the vomer; | abdominal part of the ureter; |

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| basis of the heart; | superficial lymph vessel; |
| uterine cavity; | palatine aponeurosis; |
| root of the lung; | tuber of the heelbone; |
| cortex of the suprarenal gland; | knee joint; |
| capsule of the pancreas; | body of the hyoid bone; |
| oral mucosa; | alveolar opening of the lower jaw; |
| front part of the face; | symphysis of the lower jaw; |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| A. | | |
| abdōmen, ĩnis n | abdomen, belly; | живот, брюхо; |
| caput, ĩtis n | head; | голова, головка; |
| corpus, ōris n | body; | тело; |
| crus, cruris n | 1) crus; 2) leg, shank; | голень, ножка; |
| diaphragma, ātis n | diaphragm; | диафрагма; |
| femur, ōris n | femur, thigh-bone; | бедро; |
| forāmen, ĩnis n | foramen (hole, opening); | отверстие; |
| hepar, ātis n | liver; | печень; |
| nomen, ĩnis n | name; | имя (название); |
| occĭput, ĩtis n | occiput; | затылок; |
| pectus, ōris n | breast; | грудь; |
| stroma, ātis n | stroma, framework; | строма, остов – опорная структура органа; |
| tempus, ōris n | 1) temple; 2) time; | 1) висок; 2) время; |
| zygōma, ātis n | zygoma, cheekbone; | скула; |
| B. | | |
| chiasma, ātis n | chiasm, decussation; | перекрест; |
| glomus, ěris n | glomus; | клубок; |
| systema, ātis n | system; | система; |
| tegmen, ĩnis n | roof; | крыша; |
| viscus, ěris n | organ; | внутренний орган; |
| viscera (<i>usually plural</i>) | | внутренности. |

EXCEPTIONS

Nouns of the Masculine Gender

Latin

ren, renis m
lien, enis m

English

kidney;
spleen;

Russian

почка;
селезенка.

UNIT 13

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The adjectives of the 3-d declension can be changed according to the consonant or vowel types. No adjectives are changed according to the mixed type.

1. The adjectives with one, two or three gender endings change according to the vowel type.

Examples of Declension

| | m f | n |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | frontal- is | frontal- e |
| Genetivus Singularis | frontal- is | |
| Nominativus Pluralis | frontal- es | frontal- ia |
| Genetivus Pluralis | frontal- ium | |

2. The adjectives in the comparative degree are changed according to the consonant type.

Examples of Declension

| | m f | n |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | major | majus |
| Genetivus Singularis | major- is | |
| Nominativus Pluralis | major- es | major- a |
| Genetivus Pluralis | major- um | |

Winged Words

• **Non scholae, sed vitae discimus** — «We don't learn for school but for life».

• **Nulla res tam necessaria est quam medicīna** — «Nothing is so necessary as medicine».

• **Oculi plus vident quam oculus** — «Several eyes see more than only one».

• **Omnia mea mecum porto** — «All I have I carry with me». These words are ascribed by Cicero to Byas, one of seven wisemen of Old Greece. It means that the true wealth of a man is his inner dignity.

• **Omnia praeclāra rara** — «Everything which is beautiful is rare» (Cicero).

TEST YOURSELF

Fill in the blanks with missing words or endings:

1. The adjectives of the 2-nd group in the Nominative Plural have the ending ... for the Masculine and Feminine genders and the ending ... for the Neuter gender, in the Genitive Plural all of them have the ending

2. The adjectives in comparative degree in the Nominative Plural have the ending ... for the Masculine and Feminine genders and the ending ... for the Neuter gender, in the Genitive Plural all of them have the ending

EXERCISES

1. Translate these terms into Singular and Plural:

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| afferent vessel; | lumbar trunk; |
| permanent tooth; | anterior tooth; |
| lumbar ganglion; | costal notch; |
| mental spine; | lacrimal gland; |
| ampullary crest; | cervical fascia; |
| intermuscular septum; | frontal tuber; |
| lymphatic vessel; | renal pyramids. |

2. Translate into Latin:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| interosseous intercarpal ligaments; | accessory nasal cartilages; |
| lesser vestibular glands; | pelvic sacral foramina; |
| palmar interosseous muscles; | superior alveolar nerves; |
| lesser palatine canals; | lesser palatine arteries. |

3. Translate into English:

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| nervi cervicales; | forāmina sacralia dorsalia; |
| venae inferiōres; | glandulae cervicales uteri; |
| vasa afferentia; | arteriae interlobares renis; |
| arteriae perforantes; | nuclei laterales thalāmi; |

rami perforantes;
 tubercula mentalia;
 incisurae vertebrales inferiōres;
 glandulae linguales anteriōres;
 forāmīna palatina minōra;
 rami gastrici posteriōres;
 sulci temporales transversī;

arteriae interlobulares hepātis;
 fibrae pontis longitudinales;
 lobuli thymi accessorii;
 partes laterales ossis occipitalis;
 glandulae intestinales intestīni tenuis;
 glandulae intestinales intestīni crassi;
 partes laterales ossis sacri.

4. Translate into Latin; e.g. interlobular arteries of the kidney – arteriae interlobulares renis:

semilunar folds of the colon;
 medial nuclei of the thalamus;
 alveolar foramina of the maxilla;
 longitudinal fascicles of the pons;

costal notches of the sternum;
 central veins of the liver;
 intestinal glands of the rectum;
 interosseous spaces of the metacarpus.

5. Put the following terms into Nominativus et Genetivus Singularis et Pluralis:

os frontale;
 lamīna horizontalis;
 forāmen occipitale;
 pars anterior;
 paries lateralis;

trochanter major;
 tuber parietale;
 musculus orbicularis;
 margo liber;
 facies posterior.

VOCABULARY EXTENTION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| <i>Nouns of the 1-st – 4-th declensions</i> | | |
| commissura, ae f | commissure, adhesion; | спайка; |
| metacarpus, i m | metacarpus; | пясть; |
| thalāmus, i m | thalamus; | зрительный бугор; |
| thymus, i m | thymus; | вилочковая (внутренняя грудная) железа; |
| aponeurosis, is f | aponeurosis; | апоневроз; |
| tractus, us m | tract, tractus; | путь. |
| <i>Adjectives of the 1-st and 2-nd declensions</i> | | |
| albus, a, um | white; | белый; |
| circumflexus, a, um | circumflex; | оггибающий; |
| hepaticus, a, um | hepatic; | печеночный. |

Adjectives of the 3-d declension

| | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|--|
| abdūcens, ēntis | abducent, abducting; | отводящий (нерв); |
| affērens, ēntis | afferent; | афферентный (центростремительный), приносящий; |
| ampullaris, e | ampullary; | ампулярный; |
| ascendens, ēntis | ascending; | восходящий; |
| cerebellaris, e | cerebellar; | мозжечковый; |
| communīcans, āntis | communicating; | соединительный, соединяющий; |
| corticalis, e | cortical; | корковый; |
| descendens, ēntis | descending; | нисходящий, спускающийся; |
| dorsalis, e | dorsal; | спинной, тыльный, дорсальный; |
| effērens, ēntis | efferent; | эфферентный, выносящий, выводящий; |
| follicularis, e | follicular; | фолликулярный; |
| labialis, e | labial; | губной; |
| interlobaris, e | interlobar; | междолевой; |
| interlobularis, e | interlobular; | междольковый; |
| medullaris, e | medullar; | мозговой; |
| muscularis, e | muscular; | мышечный; |
| oppōnens, ēntis | opposer; | противопоставляющий, противопологающий; |
| orbitalis, e | orbital; | глазничный; |
| palmaris, e | palmar; | ладонный; |
| palpebralis, e | palpebral; | пальпебральный (относящийся к веку); |
| permanens, ēntis | permanent; | постоянный (перманентный); |
| plantaris, e | plantar; | подошвенный |
| promīnens, ēntis | prominent; | выступающий, выдающийся; |
| pulmonalis, e | pulmonary; | легочный; |
| pyramidalis, e | pyramidal; | пирамидальный; |
| radialis, e | radial; | радиальный (лучевой); |
| recurrens, ēntis | recurrent; | возвратный, повторяющийся, рекуррентный; |
| renalis, e | renal; | почечный; |
| semilunaris, e | semilunar; | полулунный, серповидный; |
| ulnaris, e | ulnar; | локтевой; |
| vestibularis, e | vestibular; | преддверный (вестибулярный). |

UNIT 14

REVISION OF UNITS 9–13

1. Form Genetivus Singularis and name the derivational basis:

| | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| trochanter | mater | cartilāgo |
| rete | liquor | cor |
| paries | foramen | mandibula |
| tendo | fornix | frons |
| pulmo | dens | appendix |
| tuberculum | terminatio | bifurcatio |
| pars | larynx | auris |
| radix | humor | pubes |
| iris | unguis | cavitas |

2. Translate into Latin:

A.

Anterior lip of the womb;
profound infrapatellar bursa;
lateral ventricle;
vaginal venous plexus;
right jugular trunk;
oblique sinus of the pericardium;
lower horn of the lateral ventricle;

proper ligament of the ovary;
left lumbar trunk;
interosseous space;
subparietal furrow;
vagina of the eyeball;
intraparietal furrow;
marrow of the ovary.

B.

Upper canine tooth;
lateral surface of zygomatic bone;
wisdom tooth;
submandibular ganglion;
upper molar;
masseteric nerve;
trigeminal nerve;
omohyoid muscle;
mucosa of tongue;
surface of the crown of upper molar;

triangle of sublingual nerve;
root of medial upper incisor;
tubercle of lower canine;
superior and middle nasal concha;
body of hyoid bone;
alveolar part of lower jaw;
frenulum of lower lip;
alar process of ethmoid bone;
milk tooth;
notch of lower jaw.

3. Translate into Latin using terms instead of descriptions:

Muscle wrinkling the brow;
ulnar muscle flexing the wrist;
muscle lifting the palatine velum.

muscle depressing the lower lip;
muscle depressing the angle of mouth;
muscle straining the palatine velum.

4. Translate the following terms into Latin:

superficial lymph vessel;
left lobe of the liver;
internal carotid artery;
renal pelvis;
thyroid cartilage;

symphysis of the lower jaw;
longest muscle of the head;
root of the tongue;
membranaceous wall of the trachea;
back nucleus of the trapezoid body.

UNIT 15

THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS

The Fourth Declension

In Latin, the fourth declension is called *declinatio quarta*.

The Masculine nouns with the ending **-us** and Neuter nouns with the ending **-u** in the Nominative Singular and the ending **-us** for both genders in the Genitive Singular are of the fourth declension.

There is one exception from this rule, the word *manus, us f* – «hand» belongs to the Feminine gender, though it has the ending of the Masculine gender.

In Plural, they have the ending **-us** for the Masculine gender and the ending **-ua** for the Neuter gender in the Nominative case; in the Genitive case, they have the ending **-uum** for both genders.

Examples of Declension of the Masculine and Neuter Nouns

| | m | n |
|------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | duct- us | corn- u |
| Genetivus Singularis | duct- us | corn- us |
| Nominativus Pluralis | duct- us | corn- ua |
| Genetivus Pluralis | duct- uum | corn- uum |

The nouns in the Nominative Plural and Singular differ by the ending of an adjective in a word combination:

E.g. *processus pterygoideus* – the adjective has the ending **-us**; it is the ending of the Singular form; therefore, the noun is in the Singular form too.

E.g. *processus pterygoidei* – the adjective has the ending **-i**; this is the ending of the Plural form; therefore, the noun is in the Plural form too.

The Fifth Declension

In Latin, the fifth declension is called *declinatio quinta*.

The Feminine nouns with the ending *-ēi* in the Genitive Singular and the ending *-es* in the Nominative Singular are included into the fifth declension.

In Plural, they have the ending *-es* in the Nominative case and the ending *-ērum* in the Genitive case. There is only one word of the fifth declension rather widely used in the anatomical terminology.

Endings of the cases

| | Singularis | Pluralis |
|-------------|------------|----------|
| Nominativus | -es | -es |
| Genetivus | -ēi | -ērum |

Example of the fifth declension

| | f |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| Nominativus Singularis | faci- es |
| Genetivus Singularis | faci- ēi |
| Nominativus Pluralis | faci- es |
| Genetivus Pluralis | faci- ērum |

The nouns of the Nominative Singular and Plural have the same ending, which differs from one another by the ending of an adjective in a word combination:

E.g.: *facies articulares* – the noun «facies» in the plural form, as the adjective has the ending of the plural form;

E.g.: *facies articularis* – the noun «facies» is in the singular form, as the adjective has the ending of the singular form.

Winged Words

- **Optimum medicamentum quies est** — «Peace is the best medicine» (the words of Celsus).
- **Plenus venter non studet libenter** — «A full belly doesn't like studying».
- **Post mortem** — «After death».
- **Post partum** — «After delivery».
- **Potius sero quam nunquam** — «Better late than never» (Livy).

EXERCISES

1. Put the nouns into the *Nominativus* and *Genetivus Pluralis*:

| | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| ductus, us m; | fascia, ae f; | genu, us n; |
| cellula, ae f; | lobus, i m; | dens, dentis m; |
| fonticulus, i m; | caverna, ae f; | sectio, ōnis f; |
| bursa, ae f; | planum, i n; | pyrāmis, ĩdis f; |
| processus, us m; | folium, i n; | terminatio, ōnis f; |
| ampulla, ae f; | labium, i n; | pars, partis f; |
| recessus, us m; | ganglion, i n; | articulatio, ōnis f; |
| junctura, ae f; | corpus, ōris n; | phalanx, ngis f; |
| ramus, i m; | forāmen, ĩnis n; | tendo, ĩnis m; |
| palpebra, ae f; | septum, i n; | margo, ĩnis m; |
| meātus, us m; | nomen, ĩnis n; | pulmo, ōnis m; |
| rete, is n; | canalis, is m; | canaliculus, i m. |

2. Translate orally:

| | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|
| joints | muscles | fingers |
| regions | vertebrae | nuclei |
| lungs | ribs | arches |
| cartilages | teeth | papillas |
| tendons | partitions | borders |
| impressions | sinuses | branches |

3. Put the adjectives into the *Nominativus* and *Genetivus Pluralis*:

| | | |
|-----------|------------|-------------|
| buccalis | vertebrale | bronchialis |
| lata | brevis | sacrale |
| posterius | flava | zygomaticum |
| labiale | liber | longus |
| major | dorsale | alaris |
| craniale | osseus | minima |

4. Translate in writing:

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| upper incisors; | muscles of abdomen; |
| articular surfaces; | bones of skull; |
| canines; | bones of face; |
| veins of kidney; | sutures of skull; |
| cartilages of nose; | knee (= genu, us n) veins; |
| retinacula of skin; | cartilages of larynx; |
| rotating muscles of neck; | muscles of eyeball. |

5. Translate into English:

termini generales;
sinus intermedii;
musculi subcostales;
regiones abdominales;
tubuli seminiferi;
plicae gastricae;
pyramides renales;
vasa sinusoidea lienis;
juga alveolaria;

glandulae labiales;
alveoli dentales;
lobi renales;
arteriae ciliares posteriōres longae;
facies articulares;
ganglia cardiaca;
corpōra paraaortica;
radii lentis;
rami dentales inferiōres.

6. Translate into Latin, make the nouns in the Nominative case plural and agree the adjectives with them.

A.

Small alar cartilage;
lower vein of the encephalon;
small sublingual duct;
superficial lymphatic vessel;
interspinous muscle of the neck;
short posterior ciliary artery;
thoracic cardiac branch;

accessory nasal cartilages.
pelvic ganglion;
section of the spinal cord;
lobe of the mamma;
sacral pelvic hole;
semilunar band of the colon;
bone of the lower extremity.

B.

Small sublingual duct;
lower canine;
small palatine canal;
ophthalmic fascia;
accessory nasal cartilage;

upper molar;
great and small horn;
superior gingival branch;
superior and inferior nasal conch;
orbital part of frontal bone.

7. Translate into English:

incisurae cartilaginis;
partes orbitales ossis frontalis;
tubercula mentalia;
cuspis corōnae dentis posterior;
musculi infrahyoidei;

plicae transversales recti;
venae cerebri inferiōres;
conchae nasales superior et inferior;
dentes premolares et molares;
glandulae buccales.

8. Translate into Latin in writing:

adrenal glands;
cartilages of nose;

synovial pouches and vaginas;
subhepatic recesses;

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| borders of shoulder blade; | cerebrospinal nerves; |
| vertebral joints; | ventricles of larynx; |
| inferior cervical cardiac branches; | pharyngeal glands; |
| cerebrospinal roots; | pelvic openings; |
| arteries of heart; | muscles of the back. |

9. Make adjectives agree with nouns, translate into Latin:

Branches (mastoid, glandular, intermedial, duodenal, gastric);
 Openings (alveolar, papillary, intervertebral, sacral);
 Muscles (facial, transverse, infraoccipital);
 Ligaments (auricular, ventral, yellow (= flavus, a, um));
 Joints (cartilaginous, fibrous, vertebral, synovial).

10. Translate into Latin. Write in Nominativus Singularis:

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| osseous maxillary sinus; | common hepatic duct; |
| suboccipital venous plexus; | sacral horn; |
| abdominal aortic plexus; | thyroid articular surface; |
| accessory pancreatic duct; | right lymphatic duct. |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

A.

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| alveolus, i m | alveolus, alveole; | альвеола |
| ampulla, ae f | ampule, ampulla, ampoule; | ампула |
| apertura, ae f | aperture, opening; | апертура, отверстие |
| cavernosus, a, um | cavernous; | пещеристый |
| cellula, ae f | cell, cellule; | ячейка, клетка |
| communis, e | common; | общий |
| corticalis, e | cortical; | корковый |
| facialis, e | facial | лицевой |
| fibra, ae f | fibra, fiber; | волокно |
| fibrosus, a, um | fibrous; | фиброзный |
| folium, i n | folium, leaf; | лист, листок |
| genitalis, e | genital; | половой |
| gingīva, ae f | gingiva, gum; | десна |
| glandula, ae f | gland, glandula; | железа |

| | | |
|--------------------|--|---|
| glandularis, e | glandular; | железистый |
| hepaticus, a, um | hepatic; | печеночный |
| lumbalis, e | lumbar; | поясничный |
| lymphaticus, a, um | lymphatic; | лимфатический |
| manus, us f | manus, hand; | кисть (рука) |
| medulla oblongata | medulla oblongata, rachidian bulb, myelencephalon; | продолговатый мозг |
| nucleus, i m | nucleus; | ядро; |
| nutricius, a, um | nutritious, nourishing; | питательный; |
| pectoralis, e | pectoral; | грудной (относящийся к передней стенке грудной клетки); |
| pelvicus, a, um | pelvic; | тазовый; |
| pelvinus, a, um | | |
| proprius, a, um | proper, personal, 'one's own; | собственный |
| pulmonalis, e | pulmonary; | легочный |
| ramus, i m | ramus, branch; | ветвь |
| recessus, us m | recess, small; hollow, shallow; pocket, niche; | углубление, карман |
| retinaculum, i n | retinaculum, retaining band or ligament; | удерживатель |
| spatium, i n | space, spatium; | пространство, промежуток |
| spinalis, e | spinal; | спинно-мозговой |
| superficialis, e | superficial; | поверхностный |
| B. | | |
| accessorius, a, um | accessory, additional, supplementary; | добавочный; |
| brevis, e | short; | короткий; |
| flavus, a, um | yellow; | желтый; |
| glut(a)eus, a, um | gluteal; | ягодичный; |
| gyrus, i m | gyrus, convolution; | извилина; |
| metacarpus, i m | metacarpus; | пясть; |
| metatarsus, i m | metatarsus; | плюсна; |
| palpebra, ae f | palpebra, eyelid; | веко; |
| plica, ae f | plica, fold, plait; | складка; |
| radialis, e | radial; | лучевой, радиальный; |

subcutaneus, a, um subcutaneous; подкожный;
 ulnaris, e ulnar; локтевой;

C.

cilium, i n eyelash, cilium; ресница;
 ciliaris, e ciliary; ресничный;
 labialis, e labial; губной;
 papillaris, e papillary; сосочковый;
 supercilium, i n eyebrow; бровь.

UNIT 16

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS OF THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL

| | 1 | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 |
|-------------------|-------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|----------|------|-----|-------|
| | f | m | n | m f | n | m | n | f |
| Nom. Sing. | -a | -us, -er | -um, -on | various endings | | -us | -u | -es |
| Gen. Sing. | -ae | -i | | -is | | -us | | -ēi |
| Nom. Plur. | -ae | -i | -a | -es | -a (-ia) | -us | -ua | -es |
| Gen. Plur. | -ārum | ōrum | | -um (-ium) | | -uum | | -ērum |

In the III declension ending **-ia** is given to:

- Neuter nouns having the Nominative Singular **-e, -al, -ar**: *rete – retia; animal – animalia; calcar – calcaria*;
- Neuter adjectives of the 2-nd group: *frontale – frontalia; occipitale – occipitalia; simplex – simplicia*.

The ending **-ium** is given to:

- Neuter nouns ending in **-e, -al, -ar**: *retium, animalium, calcarium*;
- Nouns which stem ends in more than one consonant: *partium (pars, partis f); dentium (dens, dentis m), ossium (os, ossis n)*. Exception: nouns of Greek origin (*larynx, pharynx, meninx, phalanx*); they have a Genitive Plural ending **-um**.

- Nouns of the equal compound syllables in **-es, -is**: *famium (fames, is f); canarium (canalis, is m)*;

- all adjectives of the 2-nd group: *frontalium (m, f, n)*;

In order to form the Nominative Plural it is necessary to determine the

declension (by the ending of the Genitive Singular), the stem and the gender of a noun. Endings are added to stems according to their declensions.

Note. 1. The noun *vas*, *vasis* *n* (*vessel*) is in the III declension when it is singular and in the II declension when it is plural: *vas*, *vasis*, *vasa*, *vasorum*.

2. The words *lumbi*, *ōrum* *m* – «*loins*» and *fauces*, *ium* *f* (*fauces*) are used in Latin only in the plural, e.g.: *musculus quadratus lumbōrum* – *quadrate muscle of loins*; *isthmus faucium* – *isthmus faucium*.

Basic Abbreviations Used in the PNA

Some nouns in the Nominative Singular and Plural are usually abbreviated to two, three or four letters. It is necessary to memorize these generally accepted abbreviations:

| Singularis | Pluralis |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a. = arteria (artery) | aa. = arteriae (arteries) |
| b. = bursa (bursa) | bb. = bursae (bursae) |
| gl. = glandula (gland) | gll. = glandulae (glands) |
| lig. = ligamentum (ligament) | ligg. = ligamenta (ligaments) |
| in. = musculus (muscle) | mm. = musculi (muscles) |
| n. = nervus (nerve) | nn. = nervi (nerves) |
| r. = ramus (branch) | rr. = rami (branches) |
| vag. = vagīna (sheath) | vagg. = vagīnae (sheaths) |
| v. = vena (vein) | vv. = venae (veins) |
| for. = forāmen (foramen, opening) | forr. = forāmina (foramina, openings) |

Winged Words

- **Ab ovo (usque ad mala)** — «From eggs to apples, i.e. from the very beginning up to the end». It comes from the Roman custom to begin breakfast with an egg and end it with an apple.

- **Homo quadratus** — «A highly educated and perfectly built person». A drawing of a man placed into a circle and into a square was an emblem of artistic anatomy. It comes from sculptural canon, adopted in ancient art.

- **Pro auctōre seu pro me** — «For the author or for myself» (when the doctor makes out a prescription for himself).

- **Prognōsis optīma (pessīma)** — «Favourable (unfavourable) prognosis».

- **Statim!** — «Immediately! (Urgently!)».

- **Status commūnis** — «A general state (of the patient)».

- **Status locālis** — «A local state».
- **Status naturālis** — «A natural state».
- **Status praesens aegrōti** — «The patient's present condition».

EXERCISES

1. Translate the given words into Latin, state their Dictionary Form. Put them into Nominativus et Genetivus Singularis et Pluralis:

| | | |
|-----------|--------|----------|
| spine | angle | gland |
| ventricle | cheek | process |
| atrium | muscle | ganglion |
| node | sinus | knee |
| gum | joint | foramen |
| plexus | lung | tendon |

2. Translate into Latin and put these adjectives into Genetivus Pluralis:

| | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| long | simple | front |
| radial | greater | minimal |
| deep | upper | maximal |
| short | lesser | lumbal |

3. Translate into Latin:

A.

| | |
|---|---|
| Palatine bone; parietal bone; frontal bone; petrosal sinus; facial muscle; peritoneum cavity; bottom of the stomach; lower nasal passage; sulcus of the petrosal sinus; | internal vertebral venous plexus; zygomatic process of the frontal bone; lateral pterygoid muscle; upper trunk of the brachial plexus; broad ligament of the uterus; upper cervical ganglion; horizontal lamina of the palatine bone; greater straight muscle of the head; lateral horn of the spinal cord. |
|---|---|

B.

| | |
|--|---|
| Anterior lip of the womb; profound infrapatellar bursa; lateral ventricle; vaginal venous plexus; right jugular trunk; | proper ligament of the ovary; left lumbar trunk; interosseous space; subparietal furrow; vagina of the eyeball; |
|--|---|

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| oblique sinus of the pericardium; | intraparietal furrow; |
| lower horn of the lateral ventricle; | marrow of the ovary. |

C.

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Upper canine tooth; | mucous part of lip of mouth; |
| lateral surface of zygomatic bone; | surface of the crown of upper molar; |
| wisdom tooth; | triangle of sublingual nerve; |
| submandibular ganglion; | root of medial upper incisor; |
| superior orbital fissure of lesser ala; | tubercle of lower canine; |
| occipitopalatine muscle; | superior and middle nasal conch; |
| upper molar; | body of hyoid bone; |
| masseteric nerve; | alveolar part of lower jaw; |
| trigeminal nerve; | frenulum of lower lip; |
| omohyoid muscle; | alar process of ethmoid bone; |
| mucosa of tongue; | milk tooth; notch of lower jaw. |

4. Translate into English:

Forāmen zygomaticofaciale; musculus palatoglossus; cavum nasi; plexus dentalis superior; collum mandibulae; musculus palatopharyngēus; processus palatinus maxillae; facies lingualis corōnae dentis canini inferiōris; crista lacrimalis posterior; raphe pterygomandibularis; ductus sublingualis major glandulae sublingualis; facies palatina lamīnae horizontalis.

5. Find the stems (bases) of the following nouns:

| | | |
|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Pars, partis f; | ramus, i m; | tuber, ěris n; |
| ala, ae f; | plexus, us m; | forāmen, ĩnis n; |
| nervus, i m; | cervix, ĩcis f; | cartilāgo, ĩnis f; |
| genu, us n; | diaphragma, ātis n; | tempus, ōris n; |
| meniscus, i m; | canalis, is m; | facies, ěi f; |
| ligamentum, i n; | articulatio, ōnis f; | colon, i n. |

6. Translate into English:

| | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| mm. palāti et faucium; | medulla ossium rubra et flava; |
| rr. trigeminales et trochleares; | vasa vasōrum; |
| m. flexor digitōrum; | sinus venārum cavārum; |
| nodūli valvulārum semilunarium. | plexus cavernosi conchārum; |
| forr. venārum minimarum; | tunica conjunctīva palpebrārum; |
| cavernae corpōrum cavernosōrum; | ganglia plexuum sympathicōrum. |

7. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A.

Partition of the frontal sinuses; sinus of the hollow veins of the right heart atrium; opening of the pulmonary veins of the left heart atrium; chiasm of the tendons; long muscles driving up ribs; retaining band of the tendons of the flexors; interbuccal pouches of gluteal muscles; vessels of the vessels.

B.

Ligaments of tendons; fibrous vaginas of fingers; upper retaining band of tendons of fibular muscles; short muscles driving up ribs; medial and-lateral plates of pterygoid processes.

C.

Medial surface of incisors and canines; canals of greater and lesser petrosal nerves; lateral commissure of eyelids; lingual surface of incisors and premolars; partition of sphenoid sinuses; commissures of lips.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. | | |
| arteriosus, a, um | arterial; | артериальный |
| atrium, i n | atrium; | предсердие |
| bronchus, i m | bronchus; | бронх |
| cardiacus, a, um | cardiac; | сердечный |
| commissura, ae f | commissure, commissura; | спайка |
| generalis, e | general; | генеральный, родовой, общий |
| glandula suprarenalis | suprarenal gland; | надпочечник (железá); |
| lobus, i m | lobe; | доля; |
| medulla ossium | bone marrow; | костный мозг; |
| medulla spinalis | spinal cord / marrow; | спинной мозг; |
| medullaris, e | medullar; | мозговой; |
| paranasalis, e | paranasal; | околоносовой; |
| sanguineus, a, um | sanguineous, bloody; | кровеносный; |
| stratum, i n | layer; | слой; |
| thalamus, i m | thalamus; | таламус, зрительный; бугор мозга; |
| thymus, i m | thymus; | вилочковая железа, тимус; |

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| trachea, ae f | trachea, windpipe | трахея (дыхательное горло); |
| vagīna, ae f | vagina; | влагалище; |
| B. | | |
| carpus, i m | carpus, wrist; | запястье; |
| lumbus, i m | lumbus, loin; | поясница; |
| membranaceus, a, um | membranaceous, membranous; | перепончатый; |
| nodulus, i m | nodule; | узелок; |
| opticus, a, um | optic, optical; | зрительный; |
| peron(a)eus, a, um (seu fibularis, e) | peroneal (or fibular); | малоберцовый; |
| valvula, ae f | valve, valvule; | заслонка; |
| vesīca biliaris (seu vesīca fellea) | gallbladder, cholecyst; | желчный пузырь. |

UNIT 17

REVISION OF UNITS 14–16

1. Read aloud, translate:

Tunica serosa esophāgi, curvatura major gastris, forāmen magnum, fornix pharýngis, ductus hepaticus sinister, tunica serosa intestini tenuis, articulatio simplex, articulatio composita, impressio cardiāca hepātis, retinaculum mm. extensōrum inferius, hiātus canālis nervi petrosi minōris, apex radīcis dentis, tractus spinalis nervi trigemīni, commissura labiōrum, pars libēra gingīvae, ramus lateralis tubuli dentini.

2. Read the terms below replacing the abbreviations with full (non-abbreviated) words:

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| aa. nutriciae; | mm. interspinales; |
| gll. intestinales; | nn. articulares; |
| bb. trochanterīcae; | nn. profundī; |
| aa. superiōres; | nn. cardiaci; |
| aa. sigmoideae; | rr. orbitales; |
| forr. incisīva; | rr. oesophagēi; |
| forr. palatina minora; | vagg. synoviales; |
| ligg. interossea; | vv. cavernosae; |
| mm. interossei; | vv. centrales. |

3. Agree the adjectives with the nouns, and write these anatomical terms in Nominativus Pluralis:

plexuses (cardiac, iliac, gastric, cavernous);
ducts (paraurethral, semicircular, papillar, lymphatic);
tracts (pyramidal, nervous);
sinuses (anal, ethmoidal, intercavernous, anterior, middle, pleural);
processes (ciliary, pterygoid);
surfaces (interlobar, palmar, plantar).

4. Write in Nominativus Pluralis:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| external vertebral venous plexuses; | radial lateral surfaces; |
| minor sublingual ducts; | superior articular processes; |
| commissural nervous tracts; | ulnar medial surfaces. |

5. Translate these anatomical terms into Latin:

| | |
|---|---|
| lesser horn of the hyoid bone; | venous sinus of the sclera; |
| lateral recess of the fourth ventricle; | posterior arch of the atlas; |
| posterior horn of the fourth ventricle; | papillary process of the liver; |
| central canal of the spinal cord; | alveolar arch of the maxilla (2, 1, 3); |
| cardiac notch of the left lung; | oblique fissure of the lung; |
| horizontal fissure of the right lung; | dorsal venous arch of the foot. |

6. Translate the following terms into Latin:

A. Posterior ligament of the peroneal bone head; visceral face of the spleen; lobes of the liver; general carotid plexus; furrows of the dura mater of the brain; general hepatic duct; muscle driving up the partition of the nose; short gastric veins; cerebrospinal ganglion; head muscles; sphincter of the common bile duct; broadest muscle of the back; vessels of the vessels; fibrous and synovial joints; internal acoustic passage; bulb of the occipital horn; ligaments of the liver; greater tympanic spine; parietal tuber; lesser palatine canals; sacroiliac posterior ligaments; cartilage incisures; bifurcation of the pulmonary trunk; venous network (rete, is, n); upper constrictor of the pharynx; gluteal muscles; red bone marrow; sinus of the hollow veins of the right heart atrium; nuclei of the cranial nerves; right and left kidneys; pelvic ganglions; renal pelvis; alar ligaments, buccal glands.

B. Trochanteric pouch of the biggest gluteal muscle; parietal peritoneum; body of the gallbladder; external entrance of the urethra; vagina of the styloid

process; additional vertebral vein; areas of the body; muscles of larynx, abdomen, chest; diaphragm of the pelvis; knee ligaments; fibrous vagina of fingers of the hand; muscular coat of the urinary bladder; upper edge of the suprarenal gland; muscles of the perinaeum; right pulmonary veins.

C. Posterior lingual glands; median furrow of tongue; accessory nasal cartilages; greater and lesser petrosal nerves; alveolar part of lower jaw; superior and inferior walls of orbit; glands of mouth; muscles of face; masseteric muscles; submandibular lymphatic nodes; inferior dental arch; interdental space; incisive canal.

UNIT 18

THE FINAL TESTS ON ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Do the Final Tests on Anatomical Terminology in written form:

Test 1

1. Translate the following terms into Latin and put them into Nominativus and Genetivus Singularis and Pluralis:

Zygomatic muscle; sphenoid bone; frontal process; nasal sinus; articular tubercle.

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

Gluteal muscles; right pulmonary veins; horizontal lamina of the palatine bone; oblique fissure of the lung.

3. Translate the following terms into English:

Tunīca serosa intestini tenuis; musculus flexor pollicis longus; musculus rotātor cervīcis.

Test 2

1. Translate the following terms into Latin and put them into Nominativus and Genetivus Singularis and Pluralis:

Zygomatic arch; sphenoid concha; frontal angle; nasal bone; articular process.

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

Lesser palatine canals; nuclei of the cranial nerves; zygomatic process of the frontal bone; posterior arch of the atlas.

3. Translate the following terms into English:

Ductus hepaticus sinister; musculus flexor digīti minīmi brevis; musculus depressor septi nasi.

Test 3

1. Translate the following terms into Latin and put them into Nominativus and Genetivus Singularis and Pluralis:

Zygomatic bone; sphenoid sinus; frontal tuber; nasal spine; articular face.

2. Translate the following terms into Latin:

Submandibular lymphatic nodes; inferior dental arch; sulcus of the petrosal sinus; papillary process of the liver.

3. Translate the following terms into English:

Facies palatina lamīnae horizontalis; musculus sphincter ductus choledochi; Musculus adductor pollicis.

SECTION II

CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

The most clinical terms are of Greek origin. The notion *clinical terms* embraces a number of terminological systems functioning in the sphere of medical and biological science, which studies a sick organism. This sphere is traditionally called pathology (Greek *pathos* – *suffering, disease* + *logos* – *science, theory*). Pathology studies the clinical picture of a disease, i.e. its symptoms and signs, disturbances of physiological functions and structural changes in organs and tissues. The terminological subsystems of pathological anatomy and pathological physiology underlie clinical terminology in general.

Clinical terms proper designate various objects, processes and phenomena related to prevention and diagnostics of diseases, their differentiation with the help of the names of specific nosological (Greek *nosos* – *disease*) units or combining forms as well as to the ways of examining and treating patients. Clinical terms are also names of medical devices, instruments, equipment, etc.

UNIT I

CLINICAL TERMS. TERM BUILDING

The word may be divided into smaller meaningful elements. All these minimal word elements are called *morphemes* (Greek *morph* - form). They are Combining forms: *prefix, root, suffix, ending (termination)*. A Combining form is reiterational part of the word, helping to form the new term (it may include the root, prefix, and suffix).

The **root** expresses the main meaning of the word. *Prefixes* and *suffixes* are added to the root to derive new words. The *ending* of the word contains information about its gender, number and case.

| | | | | | | |
|---------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|
| Inter | — | muscul | — | ar | — | is, e |
| ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ |
| <i>Prefix</i> | | <i>root</i> | | <i>suffix</i> | | <i>ending</i> |

The part of the word preceding the ending makes its *stem*.

Words may be derived both using affixes (prefixes and suffixes) and without using them. In the former case, affixes are joined to the derivational stems (bases). The latter way is the way of making compound words. A compound word is the word consisting of more than one derivational stem. A simple word includes only one stem, e.g. *sternal-is, costal-is*; compound words consist of more than one stem, e.g. *stern-o-costal -is*.

Suffixation

Adding a suffix to the derivational stem is suffixation. Suffixes may be joined to the stems of nouns, adjectives and verbs.

Most of adjectives are formed from the nouns with the help of the suffixes **-al**, **-ar** of the third declension and the suffix **-ic** of the first and second declensions with the general meaning «*belonging to or related to what is indicated by the stem*».

NB! The adjectives having the endings **-aris**, **-alis**, **-ilis**, **-icus** in Latin have the endings **-ar**, **-al**, **-ile**, **-ic** in English.

| Latin adjectives | English equivalents |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| clavicularis, e | clavicular |
| medialis | medial |
| hormonalis, e | hormonal |
| infantilis, e | infantile |
| juvenilis, e | juvenile |
| senilis, e | senile |
| zygomatus, a, um | zygomatic |
| thoracicus, a, um | thoracic |
| gastricus, a, um | gastric |

Adjectives with the general meaning «*characterized by / rich in the quality indicated by the stem*» having the suffix **-os (us, a, um)** in Latin, have **-ous** in English.

| Latin adjectives | English equivalents |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| fibrosus, a, um | fibrous |
| infectiosus, a, um | infectious |
| squamosus, a, um | squamous |

Adjectives with the general meaning «*producing/causing a thing designated by the stem*» or «*produced / caused by a thing designated by the stem*» are used in the clinical terminology with the suffix **-gĕn (us, a, um)**.

| Latin adjectives | English equivalents |
|---------------------|--|
| cancerogĕnus, a, um | cancerogenic, causing cancer; |
| pyogĕnus, a, um | pyogenic, caused by pus collection; |
| enterogĕnus, a, um | enterogenic, caused by an intestinal disorder; |
| cardiogĕnus, a, um | caused by heat. |

The suffix **-io** (*-tio, -sio, -xio*) means the «process» or «action» and forms the nouns from verbs with the meanings of the operations, methods of observations, and methods of treatment.

NB! Most of nouns, having the endings **-tio, -sio, -xio** in Latin, have the endings **-tion, -sion, -xion** in English.

| Latin nouns | English equivalents |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| sanatio, ōnis f | sanation |
| rehabilitatio, ōnis f | rehabilitation |
| amputatio, ōnis f | amputation |
| remissio, ōnis f | remission |
| depressio, ōnis f | depression |

All the nouns with the suffixes **-ul** (*-cul*), **-ol-**, **-ell**, **-ill** belong to the class of diminutives, that is, they have a diminishing meaning (an indication of a smaller size):

| Latin nouns | English equivalents |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| vena, ae f | vein |
| venula, ae f | venule |
| genu, us n | knee |
| geniculum, i n | geniculum (small knee) |
| bronchus, i n | bronchus |
| bronchiolus, i n | bronchiole |
| lamina, ae f | plate |
| lamella, ae f | lamella, thin plate |
| mamma, ae f | breast |
| mamilla, ae f | nipple |

Suffixes starting with a consonant are joined to roots with the help of the linking vowel, as a rule, **-i-** in Latin words and **-o-** in Greek words, e.g. Latin **cruc-i-formis** (*crosslike*); Greek **bronch-o-genus** (*bronchogenic*).

While deriving adjectives suffixes are added to the stem of a noun (Genitive Singular form ending), e.g. *thorax, acis m* – **thorac-ic-us**; *cartilago, inis f* – **cartilag-in-e-us**.

Prefixation

Prefixation which is joining the prefix to the root does not change the meaning of the word but merely adds a semantic component specifying either

spatial localization (*above, below, ahead, behind*), or direction (*approaching, receding*), or time reference (*preceding or following something*); it may also indicate the absence of something or negate it.

Prefixes developed mainly from prepositions; therefore, their direct meanings are similar to the meanings of the corresponding prepositions.

Greek and Latin prefixes are in wide use in various subsystems of medical terminology and biology. Moreover, Latin prefixes are predominant in anatomical terms while Greek prefixes are abundant in the terms of pathological anatomy, physiology, clinical subjects.

As a rule, Latin prefixes are joined to Latin roots. However, there are some exceptional cases when the so-called *hybrid* words are built, e.g. the words ***epi-fascialis*** (*epifascial*), ***endo-cervicalis*** (*endocervical*) include Greek prefixes and Latin derivational stems. When building terms with the help of prefixes whole words are used as derivational stems.

Greek Prefixes

| № | Prefix | Meaning | Examples | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------|---|
| | | | Latin | English |
| 1 | <i>endo- ento-</i> | inside, intra- | endogenous | of internal origin |
| 2 | <i>peri-</i> | around, surrounding smth. | periosteum | periosteum |
| 3 | <i>para</i> | 1. near/next to; 2. deviation from the norm | paranasalis | paranasal paramnesia (false recollection) |
| 4 | <i>ecto-, exo-</i> | out of, outside | exogenous | of external origin |
| 5 | <i>hyper-, epi-</i> | above | hyperthyreosis | increased function of the thyroid gland |
| 6 | <i>hypo-</i> | below/under | hypofunctio | decreased function |
| 7 | <i>pro-</i> | fore-/pre- | prognosis | prognosis, forecast |
| 8 | <i>meta-</i> | 1. behind 2. transition | metencephalon; metastasis | back encephalon; spread of pathogens |
| 9 | <i>meso-</i> | between, in the middle (of) | mesencephalon | middle brain |

| | | | | |
|----|-------------------|---|---|---|
| 10 | dia- | 1. between 2. through 3. division | diaphysis diarrhoea diagnosis | middle part of the diaphysis (tubulous bone); diarrhea; diagnosis |
| 11 | syn-, sym- | with, together with | synostosis | connection with the help of bone tissue |
| 12 | anti- | against | antibacterialis | antibacterial |
| 13 | ana- | 1. upwards; 2. resuming | anacrota; anabiosis | part of the pulse wave going upwards; recovery to life |
| 14 | cata- | 1. downwards; 2. reinforcement | catacrota | part of the pulse wave going downwards |
| 15 | en- | in, inside | encephalon | encephalon (literally – in the head) |
| 16 | ex-, ec- | out of | ectomia | excision |
| 17 | a-, an- | absence, lack; negation | atrophia; anaesthesia | lack of nutrition; making numb, unable to feel |
| 18 | dys- | disorder, dysfunction | dysuria | difficulty in urination |
| 19 | eu- | normal functioning | eupnoë | normal respiration |

NB! When combined with the names of different organs the prefixes **endo-**, **peri-**, **para-** mean their coatings.

endo- inner coating, e. g. *endometritis* (inflammation of the uterine inner coating);

peri- outer coating, e.g. *perimetritis* (inflammation of the uterine outer coating);

para- tissue near the organ, e.g. *parametrium* (the tissue near the uterus).

NB! *anamnesis* – finding out the events preceding a disease by questioning patients; *catamnesis* – case history of the patient after the treatment.

Latin Prefixes

| № | Prefix | Meaning | Examples | |
|----|----------------------------|---|---|--|
| | | | Latin | English |
| 1 | <i>ad- (ac-, af-, ap-)</i> | approaching, connecting | adductio appendix | adduction appendix |
| 2 | <i>ab-</i> | driving aside | abductio | abduction |
| 3 | <i>intra-</i> | inside | intracapsularis | intracapsular |
| 4 | <i>extra-</i> | outside | extracapsularis | extracapsular |
| 5 | <i>infra-, sub-</i> | under | infraorbitalis; sublingualis | infraorbital; sublingual |
| 6 | <i>supra-, super-</i> | above | suprarenalis; superficialis | suprarenal; superficial |
| 7 | <i>ante-, prae-</i> | pre-, fore- | antebrachium praesenilis | antebrachium, forearm; presenile |
| 8 | <i>post-</i> | post- | postnatalis | postnatal |
| 9 | <i>inter-</i> | inter-, between | intermuscularis | intermuscular |
| 10 | <i>trans-, per-</i> | through, transition | transfusio; peroralis | transfusion; peroral |
| 11 | <i>re-</i> | resuming, repeating response, reaction | reanimatio; reactio | resuscitation; reaction |
| 12 | <i>con- (com-, col-)</i> | with, together with | conjunctiva, compositus | conjunctiva, complex |
| 13 | <i>contra-</i> | contra- | contralateralis | contralateral |
| 14 | <i>in-, im-</i> | in, inside | inflammatio | inflammation |
| 15 | <i>ex-, e-(ef-)</i> | out of | externus | external |
| 16 | <i>-in-, (-im-, -il)</i> | negation | insufficiencia, immobilis | insufficiency, immobile |
| 17 | <i>dis-(dif-)</i> | division, disintegration | dislocatio, diffusus | dislocation, diffused |
| 18 | <i>de-, des-, se-</i> | eliminating, depriving of smth. | degeneratio, desinfectio, separatio | degeneration, disinfecting, separation |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| <i>abscessus, us m</i> | abscess, a collection of pus, white blood cells, and protein, which are present at the site of infection; | нарыв, гнойник; |
| <i>acūtus, a, um</i> | acute (sharp and sudden); | острый; |
| <i>benignus, a, um</i> | benign (not harmful for life); | добро- качественный |
| <i>cancer, cri m</i> | cancer (any malignant neoplasm); | рак; |
| <i>cancerosus, a, um</i> | cancerous; | раковый; |
| <i>caries, ei f</i> | caries; | кариес (костоеда); |
| <i>chronicus, a, um</i> | chronic (of long duration); | хронический; |
| <i>colīca, ae f</i> | colic, a sudden attack of pain in the stomach or abdomen; | внезапные приступы боли в животе; |
| <i>coma, ātis n</i> | coma, deep sleep or unconsciousness due to surgery or illness; | кома, бессознательное состояние; |
| <i>comatosus, a, um</i> | comatose (in a state of coma); | коматозный; |
| <i>cysta, ae f</i> | cyst: 1) any bladder; 2) sac, containing gas, fluid, etc. | киста; |
| <i>cystosus, a, um</i> | cystic, cystous (pertaining to the cyst); | кистозный; |
| <i>diabētes, ae m</i> | diabetes (disease having the symptoms polyuria); | диабет; |
| <i>diabeticus, a, um</i> | diabetic (relating to diabetes); | диабетический; |
| <i>diffūsus, a, um</i> | diffuse; | диффузный, разлитой, распространенный; |
| <i>eczēma, ātis n</i> | eczema (skin eruption); | экзема, лишай; |
| <i>fractura, ae f</i> | fracture, a break (of a bone or cartilage); | перелом; |

| | | |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| <i>gangraena, ae f</i> | gangrene (death of body tissue, usually resulting from obstructed circulation); | гангрена; |
| <i>gangraenosus, a, um</i> | gangrenous; | гангренозный; |
| <i>infantilis, e</i> | infantile, of children; | инфантильный, детский; |
| <i>infectio, ōnis f</i> | infection (penetration of infectious agents into the body); | инфекция; |
| <i>infectiosus, a, um</i> | infectious; | инфекционный; |
| <i>inflammatio, ōnis f</i> | inflammation; | воспаление; |
| <i>juvenīlis, e</i> | juvenile, of young people; | ювенильный, юношеский; |
| <i>malignus, a, um</i> | malignant (harmful for life); | злокачественный; |
| <i>morbus, i m</i> | disease, malady, illness; | болезнь; |
| <i>oedema, ātis n</i> | edema (swelling, fluid in the sells, tissues or serous cavities); | отек; |
| <i>paralŷsis, is f</i> | paralysis (stop of function); | паралич; |
| <i>paralyticus, a, um</i> | paralytic (relating to paralysis) | паралитический; |
| <i>parēsis, is f</i> | paresis (partial or incomplete paralysis); | парез, неполный паралич; |
| <i>pneumonia, ae f</i> | pneumonia (inflammation of the lung parenchyma); | пневмония, воспаление легких; |
| <i>senīlis, e</i> | senile, of old age; | сенильный, старческий; |
| <i>spasmus, i m</i> | spasm (sudden, violent, involuntary muscular contraction); | спазм, судорога; |
| <i>spasticus, a, um</i> | spastic; | спастический; |
| <i>trauma, ātis n</i> | trauma (an injury); | травма; |
| <i>traumaticus, a, um</i> | traumatic (relating to or caused by trauma); | травматический; |
| <i>ulcus, ėris n</i> | ulcer (a lesion on the mucous or skin surface); | язва; |

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| <i>ulcerosus, a, um</i> <i>glaucoma, ātis n</i> | ulcerous; glaucoma: increased intraocular pressure results in the lens becoming opaque (impenetrable by light); | язвенный; глаукома; |
| <i>hernia, ae f</i> | hernia (bulging forth, or protrusion, of an organ or the muscular wall of an organ through the cavity which normally contains it); | грыжа |
| <i>hernialis, e</i> <i>ictērus, i m</i> | hernial; icterus, jaundice (yellow colouring of the tissues); | грыжевой; желтуха; |
| <i>ileus, i m</i> | ileus (intestinal obstruction); | кишечная непроходимость; |
| <i>varix, icis m/f</i> | varix, venous node, dilated vein; | варикс, венозный узел, расширенная вена; |
| <i>varicosus, a, um</i> <i>volvulus, i m</i> | varicose; volvulus (twisting of the intestine upon itself); | варикозный; заворот кишок. |

EXERCISES

1. Explain the meaning of the suffixes, translate the terms:

Ductus pancreaticus, fossa condylaris, incisura fibularis, processus styloideus, ductus hepaticus, os scaphoideum, palatum osseum, vena gastrica, musculus gluteus, arteria meningēa, fossa canina maxillae, cavitas medullaris, cornu sacrale, tuber ischiadicum, systēma nervōsum centrale.

2. Build Latin adjectives with the general meaning

«rich in»:

Fibers (fibrous), mucus (mucous), caverns (cavernous), ganglions, granules, tubers, pigment;

«related to/ pertaining to»:

Thorax, tympanum, diaphragm, carotid, stomach, thalamus, lymph, ureter.

3. Use the verbal stem below to build nouns with the suffix -io. Translate the derived words:

Extractum (extract); resectum (excise, cut out); punctum (puncture);

exstirpatum (eradicate, extirpate); sectum (incise, cut open); extensum (extend); contractum (contract); injectum (inject); transfusum (transfuse); selectum (select); depressum (depress, press down); compressum (compress, squeeze), perforatum (perforate).

4. Translate the clinical terms; explain the meaning of the suffixes:

Abscessus chronicus, perforatio appendicis, abscessus hepatis ascaridosus, polypus fibrosus, glaucoma juvenile, cancer papillaris, cancer pulmonis, eruptio medicamentosa, ulcus gangraenosum, cysta dentalis radicularis, cysta palatina.

5. Translate the following terms into Latin:

Diabetic coma, hepatic coma, lymphogenic cyst of the neck, longitudinal fracture, diffuse abscess, varicose ulcer, chronic ulcer, diaphragmatic hernia, femoral hernia, dental apical cyst, acute duodenal ileus, acute caries of the tooth, hypertonic disease.

6. Translate the following adjectives into Latin:

NB! Sublingual (duct), hypoglossal (nerve), hyoid (bone), submandibular, suboccipital, intercostal, intermuscular, extraperitoneal, intracapsular, suprathoracic, supramarginal, suprarenal, retrosternal, retrobuccal, retroperitoneal, retropharyngeal.

NB! The adjectives *hyoideus*, *hypoglossus*, *sublingualis* have the meaning “located under the tongue”, but the first one designates “the bone under the tongue” (*os hyoideum*); the second one – “the nerve under the tongue” (*nervus hypoglossus*), and the third one has a more general meaning of “any structure except the two mentioned above” (*ductus sublingualis*, *lamina sublingualis* etc.)

7. Write prefixes with the meaning opposite to:

Extra-; hypo-; super-; in-; epi-; post-; ana-, ad-.

UNIT 2

COMPOUND WORDS

General Information

A compound word is a word, which is composed of two or three stems. Many words of both Greek and Latin origin are compound words. Compound words may be built in two different ways:

- by joining two or more stems together;

- by joining two or more stems together and adding a suffix.

E.g. ***rhinencephalon, occipitofrontalis***.

There are a few noun compounds among anatomical terms, while adjective compounds are quite common. The stems used for them may be monolingual (either Latin or Greek), e.g. (Latin) ***septomarginalis***, (Greek) ***thoracoacromialis***. At the same time, there are many «hybrid» compounds: ***musculoperoneus*** (Latin ***musculus*** + Greek ***peroneus***), ***zygomaticofrontalis*** (Greek ***zygomaticus*** + Latin ***frontalis***), etc.

While in Latin there were very few compounds, in Greek compound words were very common. All anatomical compound terms were derived from Greek stems. They are also numerous among histological terms (e.g. ***cytus*** – *cell* from Greek ***kytos*** – *vessel, cavity*, ***blastus*** – *immature cell* from Greek ***blastos*** – *embryo*, etc).

Different fields of medical science tend to use either Latin or Greek terms to designate the same organ. In normal anatomy (studying the anatomical structure of a normal body), Latin independent stems are traditionally used. In pathological anatomy (studying disorders of the organism's development) derivatives of Greek stems are in wide use.

There are just a few cases when in both fields similar words borrowed from the same language are in use: Greek ***hepar, oesophagus, larynx, pharynx, tonsilla, thorax, ureter, urethra, encephalon***, etc. These words may also become part of compound clinical terms: ***hepatomegalia, encephalitis***, etc. Therefore, anatomical words are predominantly Latin, while clinical compounds were derived from Greek bound stems.

There are some exceptions from this rule. For example, the word ***pulmonologia*** (*a science of lung diseases and their treatment*) includes the Latin stem ***pulmon-*** (*lung*), while clinical term ***pneumonia*** (*lung inflammation*) includes the Greek stem ***pneumo-*** (*lung*).

Stems are joined into a single word by means of a linking vowel (interfix). The most common linking vowel is ***-o-***. The vowel ***-i-*** is of rare occurrence.

A linking vowel is not used when the first stem ends in a vowel or the second stem begins with a vowel: ***brady-cardia; rhin-encephalon***.

*Any part of a derivative (a morpheme or a block of morphemes) regularly reproduced without any change in the existing and newly constructed terms and preserving its terminological meaning is a **Combining form**.*

In compound terms, the Combining forms with anatomical meaning are used as initial motivating bases as a rule. The final components express the essence and have a classifying function. Some of them are concerned with some class of pathological phenomena, others – with surgical operations or some diagnostic manipulations.

As an example, the terms with the initial combining form “**cardio-**“(heart) are the following:

cardiologia – a science of heart;

cardiologus – physician specializing in cardiology;

cardiopathia – any disease of the heart;

cardiotherapia – treatment of the heart;

cardialgia – pain in the heart;

cardiogramma – the graphic tracing made by the styllet of a cardiograph;

cardiometria – measurement of the dimensions of the heart;

cardiogenesis – formation of the heart in embryo;

cardiomegalia – enlargement of the heart.

For consistency of interpretation of a compound term, one should start analyzing its final stem putting the question “*what?*” and then go over to the initial part of the term putting the question “*of what?*” or “*where?*”:

myologia (*myo* – muscle; *logia* – science) – (*what?*) science (*of what?*) of muscle;

myalgia (*myo* – muscle; *algia* – pain) – (*what?*) pain (*where?*) in muscle.

Combining forms are mainly monosemantic (have one meaning), though, some of them may be polysemantic (have two or more meanings), e.g. the stem **onco-** (Greek **onkos** – *heap, mass, volume*) in some words has the meaning «**volume, mass**»: (**oncogramma** – *a curve showing changes in volume*; **oncometria** – *measuring the volume of tissues and organs*), while in others it means «**tumour**» (**oncogenesis** *process of tumour development*; **oncologus** *physician specializing in treating tumours and preventing their development*).

The Combining forms **haemo-**, **haemato-** and **-aemia** convey the general meaning «*related to blood*». At the same time the final **-aemia** denotes blood as a medium, where some substances are found. Besides, their presence and concentration in this medium are considered to be pathological factors (**azotaemia**, **uraemia**, **bacteriaemia**).

If **haemo-** or **haemato-** combines with the name of an organ, the summarized meaning is *collection of blood in the cavity of an organ, bleeding*, e.g. **haematomyelia** – *spinal cord bleeding*; **haemarthrosis** – *collection of blood in the cavity of a joint*.

NB! Almost every Latin term of the Normal Anatomy has its Greek duplicate in the Pathological Anatomy. Greek designations of organs and tissues occur as Combining forms and are usually not used as independent words, but we single them out in the structure of a compound term.

NOTE SPECIAL CLINICAL EXPRESSIONS!

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Habitus aegrōti</i> | appearance of a sick person in general; |
| <i>Status praesens (aegrōti)</i> | the present condition of a patient (at the moment of examination); |
| <i>Praesente medicō</i> | in the presence of the doctor; |
| <i>Absente aegrōto</i> | in the absence of the patient; |
| <i>Exītus letalis</i> | lethal outcome; |
| <i>Facies Hippocratica</i> | Hippocrates' face (face of a dying person); |
| <i>Rubor, tumor, calor, dolor et functio laesa</i> | Redness, swelling, fever, pain and disturbed function; |
| <i>Prognōsis dubia</i> | doubtful prognosis; |
| <i>Prognōsis mala</i> | bad / discouraging prognosis; |
| <i>Prognōsis pessīma</i> | very bad prognosis; |
| <i>Prognōsis letalis</i> | lethal (death) prognosis; |
| <i>Prognōsis bona</i> | good / encouraging prognosis; |
| <i>Prognōsis optīma</i> | very good prognosis; |
| <i>Symptomāta et diagnōsis</i> | symptoms and diagnosis; |
| <i>Complicatiōnes</i> | complications. |

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

GREEK AND LATIN DUPLICATES: NAMES OF ORGANS AND BODY PARTS

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <i>kephalo-, cephalo-, -cephalia</i> | caput, ĩtis n | head; | голова; |
| <i>somato-, soma-</i> | corpus, ōris n | body; | тело; |
| <i>osteo-</i> | os, ossis n | bone; | кость; |
| <i>acro-, acria</i> | membrum, i n | member, limb, extremity; | дистальный отдел части тела, конечность, заостренность; |
| <i>stetho-</i> | pectus, ōris n; thorax, ācis m | breast, chest, thorax; | грудь, грудная клетка (Greek); |
| <i>spondylo-</i> | vertebra, ae f | vertebra; | позвонок; |
| <i>cardio-, -cardium</i> | cor, cordis n | heart; | сердце; |
| <i>arthro-</i> | articulatio, ōnis f | articulation, joint; | сустав; |
| <i>stomato-</i> | os, oris n | mouth; | рот; |
| <i>glossa-, -glossia</i> | lingua, ae f | tongue; | язык; |
| <i>rhino-</i> | nasus, i m | nose; | нос; |
| <i>odonto-, odontia</i> | dens, dentis m | tooth; | зуб; |

| | | | |
|---|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>cheiro-, chiro-, -cheiria, -chiria</i> | manus, us f | hand; | рука; |
| <i>podo-, -podia</i> | pes, pedis m | foot; | стопа, нога; |
| <i>gon-</i> | genu, us n | knee; | колено; |
| <i>r(h)achi-</i> | columna vertebralis | spinal column; | позвоночный столб; |
| <i>odonto-, -odontia</i> | dens, dentis m | tooth; | зуб; |
| <i>cheilo-, -cheilia</i> | labium, i n | lip; | губа; |
| <i>urano-</i> | palātum, i n | palate; | нёбо; |
| <i>ul-, ulo-</i> | gingīva, ae f | gum; | десна; |
| <i>melo-</i> | bucca, ae f | cheek; | щека; |
| <i>gnatho-, -gnathia</i> | maxilla, ae f | upper jaw; | верхняя челюсть; |
| <i>-genia</i> | mandibula, ae f | lower jaw; | нижняя челюсть; |
| <i>-genia</i> | mentum, i n | chin; | подбородок. |

COMBINING FORMS DENOTING SCIENCE, METHODS OF DIAGNOSTICS, TREATMENT, DISEASE

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|------------------------|---|--|
| <i>-logia</i> | a science, study; | наука, раздел научной дисциплины; |
| <i>-logo-</i> | related to speech disorders; | относящийся к нарушениям речи; |
| <i>-scopia</i> | instrumental examination, observation; | инструментальный осмотр, наблюдение, исследование; |
| <i>-metria</i> | measuring; | измерение; |
| <i>-graphia</i> | roentgenography (X-ray examination), radiography; the process of recording a signal; | рентгенография; процесс записывания изображения; графическая регистрация сигналов; |
| <i>-gramma</i> | the result of X-ray examination or of registering smth. | рентгеновский снимок, результат изображения или регистрации чего-л. |
| <i>-therapia</i> | treatment (non-operative); | лечение (нехирургическое); |
| <i>noso-</i> | a disease; | болезнь; |
| <i>patho-, -pathia</i> | feeling, suffering, disease; | страдание, заболевание; |
| <i>-algia, -odynia</i> | pain, ache; | болезненная чувствительность, боль. |

EXERCISES

1. Explain the meaning of Latin terms:

Osteoarthropathia, osteologia, stomatologia, pathologia, chiroscoopia, chirospasmus, somatoscoopia, arthropathia, logopathia, cardiographia, hormonotherapia, brachialgia, spondylographia, rhinologia, osteogenus, odontogenus, hepatogenus, glossalgia, meloplastica, gnathoplastica, podalgia, odontalgia, pancreatodynia, gonalgia, acroalgia, spondylodynia, cheilodynia, ulodynia, gnathodynia, otalgia, cardiogramma, encephalogramma, gnathospasmus.

2. Build terms matching the description:

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| -pathia | disease of the teeth; disease of the brain; disease of the extremities; disease of the joints; disease of the nose; disease of the heart; disease of bones; |
| -genus | caused by the heart, i.e. of cardiac origin; caused by liver condition; |
| -scopia | examination of the mouth; examination of the nose; examination of the body; |
| -graphia | X-ray examination of the brain; X-ray examination of the vertebra; |
| -algia, -odynia | pain in the joint; pain in the lip; pain in the foot; toothache; heartache; |
| -therapia | treatment of the teeth; treatment of the heart; |
| -logia | a science of the heart; |
| -metria | measuring of the head. |

3. Explain the meaning of the terms below:

Cardiogram, cardiospasm (ostium cardiacum), glossospasm, craniometry,

somatometry, pancreatagia, heliotherapy (Greek *helios* – sun), logotherapy, electrotherapy, arotherapy, hormonotherapy, peritoneoscopy, vasodilation, cephalogram, cephalograph, cephalography, duodenography, pelvigraphy, rectoscopy, pathogenic, pathology, cardiologist, cardiology, osteogenic.

UNIT 3

GREEK SUFFIXES IN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

I. Suffixes *-ōsis*, *is f*, *-iāsis*, *is f* are commonly used to derive new words with the meaning «*process or result of what is indicated by the stem*», e.g. *stenōsis* – *narrowing (process and its result)*; *sclerōsis* – *hardening (process and its result)*; *narcōsis* – *narcosis, numbness*; *lithiāsis* – *stone formation*.

The bulk of derivatives with the suffix *-ōsis* have the general meaning «*pathological process, a degenerative disease, a chronic morbid condition*». The derivational stems may convey one of the following meanings:

- tissue, organ, part of a body or system of an organism affected by a disease, e.g. *fibrōsis* – *fibrous transformation*; *nephroōsis* – *a degenerative disease of renal tubules*; *neurōsis* – *a functional disturbance of the nervous system*; *psychōsis* – *a mental disorder*;
- substance causing a disease, e.g. *toxicōsis* (Gr. *toxicon* – *poison*) – *a disease caused by toxic, poisonous substances*;
- causative agent or infection, e.g. *ascariōsis* – *a disease caused by ascarides*.

NB! If a stem denotes a blood corpuscle or tumour, the derivative acquires the meaning «*spread, dissemination, proliferation*» of what is designated by the derivational stem, e.g. *leucocytōsis* – *increase in the number of leucocytes in the peripheral blood*; *fibromatōsis* – *multiple fibromas (fibroma, ātis n)*.

II. Suffix *-ītis*, *-itidis f* is used in the names of inflammatory diseases, e.g. *gastrītis* – *inflammation of the gastric mucosa*; *nephritīs* – *inflammation of kidneys*.

III. Suffix *-ōma*, *-ātis n* is used in the names of tumours.

In medical terminology, the stems of nouns and adjectives denoting tissues are combined with the suffix *-ōma* to build the names of tumours, e.g. *fibrōma* – *benign tumour of fibrous connective tissue*; *osteōma* – *benign tumour of osseous tissue*.

Names of malignant tumours are derived from the stems whose meaning has no indication to a tissue, e.g. *carcinōma* (Gr. *karkinos* – *cancer*, Gr. *karkinoma*

– *ulcer, cancer*) – *cancer, malignant tumour of epithelium*; *sarcōma* (Gr. *sarks, sarkos* – meat, flesh, Gr. *sarkōma* – fleshy wart, tumour) – *malignant tumour of mesenchymal origin*.

NB! The general meaning «*tumour*» is conveyed by a number of terms: *tumor, ōris m; blastōma, ātis n* (Gr. *blastos* – embryonic or immature cell); *neoplasma, ātis n* – *newgrowth*, as well as by the stem *onco-* (Gr. *oncos* – mass, volume).

NB! In ancient Greek the suffix *-ōma* was used to build verbal nouns having the general meaning «*result of the action designated by the derivational stem of a verb*», e.g. *sympōma* – *symptom*; *stōma* – *stome* as well as names of eye diseases: *glaucōma, trachōma*.

IV. Suffix *-īsmus*.

The meanings of nouns derived by means of this suffix may vary. They may denote phenomena, properties or facts marked with a characteristic signified by the stem, e.g. *infantīlīsmus* (Lat. *infantilis* – *infantile*) – *pathological state characterized by retarded physical or mental development when infantile or juvenile qualities are preserved*; *strabīsmus* (Gr.) – *strabismus, squint*; *alcoholīsmus* (Arab.) – *alcoholism*; *daltonīsmus* (after the English chemist and physicist Dalton) – *colour-blindness*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING ORGANS AND TISSUES

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|---|---|---|
| <i>splanchno-</i> | <i>viscēra pl.</i> | inner organs; | внутренние органы (внутренности); |
| <i>gastro-, -gastria entero-</i> | <i>ventriculus, i m intestīnum, i n; intestīnum tenue</i> | stomach; intestine, small intestine; | желудок кишка, кишечник, тонкая кишка; |
| <i>laparo-</i> | <i>abdōmen, īnis n; venter, ntris m</i> | abdomen, belly; | живот, чрево, брюхо; |
| <i>procto-</i> | <i>anus, i m; rectum, i n</i> | anus, rectum; | задний проход, прямая кишка; |
| <i>pneumono-, pneumo- nephro- spleno-</i> | <i>pulmo, ōnis m ren, renis m lien, lienis m</i> | lung; kidney; spleen; | легкое; почка; селезенка; |

| | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>pyelo-</i> | pelvis renalis | renal pelvis; | почечная лоханка; |
| <i>cysto-</i> | vesīca, ae f; vesīca urinaria | urinary bladder; | пузырь, мешок, мочевой пузырь; |
| <i>cholecysto-</i> | vesīca fellea s. vesīca biliaris | gallbladder; | желчный пузырь; |
| <i>choleodocho-</i> | ductus choledochus | common bile duct; | общий желчный проток; |
| <i>cholangio-</i> | ductus bilifēri | bile ducts; | желчные протоки; |
| <i>metro-, -metra, -metrium hystero-</i> | uterus, i m | uterus, womb; | матка. |

**COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING PATHOLOGICAL
CONDITIONS
IN ORGANS AND TISSUES AND THERAPEUTICAL
AND SURGICAL METHODS**

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| <i>-iatria,- iater</i> | treatment; physician; | врачевание-лечение, врач; |
| <i>-ptosis</i> | ptosis, sinking, prolapse of an organ; | опущение, смещение органа книзу; |
| <i>-ectasia,-ectasis</i> | dilation, enlargement; | растяжение, расширение; |
| <i>-steno-, -stenosis</i> | narrowing, tightening, stricture; | сужение, стеноз, узкий, тесный; |
| <i>-sclerosis</i> | hardening, becoming denser; | уплотнение, затвердение, твердый; |
| <i>-malacia</i> | softening or loss consistency and contiguity in any of the organs or tissues; | размягченность; |
| <i>-lysis</i> | 1) destruction, dissolution; 2) operation for eliminating (dissecting)commissures, adhesions, scars; | 1) разрушение, растворение; 2) хирургическая операция освобождения (рассечения) сращений, спаек, рубцов; |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| -plastica | plastic / reparative operation; | пластическая восстановительная операция; |
| -tomo Ex.: tomographia | body section, sectional roentgenography; | относящийся к слою, (послойная рентгенография); |
| -tomia | an operation of dissecting an organ; incision of an organ; | хирургическая операция рассечения, вскрытия органа; |
| -ectomia | an operation of excising (removing) an organ, tissue; excision of an organ, tissue; | хирургическая операция удаления, иссечения органа, ткани; |
| -stomia | an operation of making a mouth (fistula) between organs, vessels; | хирургическая операция наложения искусственного отверстия, свища или соустья между органами, кровеносными сосудами; |
| -pexia | an operation of fixing an organ; | хирургическая операция прикрепления органа, фиксация; |
| -rhapsia | an operation of putting a rhaps (seam) on an organ; | хирургическая операция наложения шва; |
| -schisis | a cleft organ; | расщепление, расслаивание органа. |

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following into English:

Sectio caesarea, hernia vaginalis, hernia subcutanea, lymphocytosis infectiosa acuta, colitis cystosa, colitis superficialis, pyelitis cystosa, ductus biliferi, hernia femoralis, refluxus intestinorenalis, splenitis maligna, pyelonephrosis chronica, carcinoma fibrosum, tumor malignus, tumor benignus, osteoarthrosis senilis, lien mobilis.

2. a) Form names of inflammatory diseases of the following organs:

Stomach, peritoneum, rectum, ureter, kidney, spleen, liver, mouth, tongue, urethra, bladder, gallbladder, nose, ear, larynx, pharynx, meninges, trachea, tonsil, joint, uterus, renal pelvis, spine, brain, pleura, pancreas, biliary ducts.

b) Form names of tumours developing from the tissues of:

Muscle, cartilage, bone, liver, tooth, connective tissue (fibr-), epithelium, endothelium, lymph.

3. Single out derivational stems / morphemes. Explain their meaning:

Gastroenterologia, splanchnologia, intestinoplastica, spondylotomia, laparotomia, gastrectasia, enteroptosis, proctospasmus, thoracolarotomia, hydrotherapia, pneumonopexia, choledochoplastica, choledochostomia, chondromalacia, acroparalysis, hysteroscopia, nephrotomographia, splenorrhaphia, nephrostomia, splenitis, osteomalacia, metroplastica, stenocardia, colostoma, osteolysis.

4. Build single-word Latin terms:

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>-ectasia</i> | dilation of the lungs; |
| 2. <i>-ectomy</i> | removal of tonsils; |
| 3. <i>-pexia</i> | fixation of the kidney; |
| 4. <i>metr-</i> | removal of the uterus; |
| 5. <i>-odynia</i> | pain in the spine; |
| 6. <i>-ptosis</i> | kidney prolapse; |
| 7. <i>splanchno-</i> | prolapse of inner organs; |
| 8. <i>-tomy</i> | dissection of the abdomen; |
| 9. <i>nephro-</i> | dissection of the kidney; |
| 10. <i>-pexia</i> | fixation of the colon; |
| 11. <i>spleno-</i> | fixation of the spleen; |
| 12. <i>-spasmus</i> | spasm of the colon; |
| 13. <i>proct-</i> | pain in the region of the rectum; |
| 14. <i>-malacia</i> | softening of a bone; |
| 15. <i>chondro-</i> | softening of a cartilage; |
| 16. <i>-plastica</i> | restorative surgery on the larynx; |
| 17. <i>-stomy</i> | placing a new opening on the colon; |
| 18. <i>colo-</i> | a new opening of the colon; |
| 19. <i>-rhaphia</i> | putting a rhaps on the spleen; |
| 20. <i>cholang-</i> | inflammation of the gallbladder. |

5. Name Greek and Latin duplicates of organs:

| | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| Stomach | knee |
| lung | tooth |
| renal pelvis | mouth |
| kidney | cheek |
| joint | upper jaw |
| nose | hand |
| tongue | abdomen |
| vertebra | womb |
| urinary bladder | inner organs |

UNIT 4

COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING TISSURES, ORGANS, SEX, AGE, SECRETION VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>haemo-, haemato- -aemia</i> | sanguis, ĩnis m | blood; | кровь; |
| <i>histo-, histio-</i> | textus, us m | tissue; | ткань; |
| <i>myo-, -mysium</i> | musculus, i m | muscle; | мышца, мышечный; |
| <i>cyto-, -cytus</i> | cellula, ae f | cell; | клетка; |
| <i>chondro-</i> | cartilago, ĩnis f | cartilage; | хрящ, хрящевой; |
| <i>-cele</i> | hernia, ae f | hernia; | грыжа; вздутие, выбухание; |
| <i>neuro-, neuroi-</i> | nervus, i m | nerve; | нерв; |
| <i>adeno-</i> | 1) glandula, ae f 2) nodus lymphaticus (lymphonodus) | 1) gland; 2) lymph node; | 1) железа, железистый эпителий; 2) лимфатический узел; |
| <i>angio-</i> | vas, vasis n; vasculum, i n | vessel; | сосуд (<i>преиму- щественно</i> кровеносный); |

| | | | |
|--|--|---|--|
| <i>blasto-, -blastus</i> | germen, ĩnis, n | embryonic, immature cell; | зачаток, бласт, зародышевая клетка или ранняя эмбриональная стадия; |
| <i>phlebo- teno-</i> | vena, ae f tendo, ĩnis m | vein; tendon; | вена; сухожилие; |
| <i>dermo-, dermato-, -derma</i> | cutis, is f | skin; | кожа; |
| <i>uro-, -uresis, -uria</i> | urina, ae f | urine; | моча; |
| <i>chole-, -cholia</i> | fel, fellis n; bilis, is f | bile; | желчь; |
| <i>chylo-, -chylia</i> | lymp̄ha, ae f | 1) chyle (gastric or intestinal juice), 2) related to the lymph; | относящийся к лимфе, к хилусу – млечному соку; |
| <i>pyo- hidro-</i> | pus, puris n sudor, ōris m | pus; sweat, perspiration; | гной; пот; |
| <i>hydro-</i> | aqua, ae f | 1) water; 2) liquid; | 1) вода; 2) жидкость; |
| <i>toxō-, toxico-, toxi-</i> | venĕnum, i n | poison; | яд, ядовитый, токсический; |
| <i>litho-, lithiasis</i> | calculus, i m | calculus, stone; | наличие конкрементов, камня; |
| <i>onco-</i> | tumor, ōris m | tumour, swelling; | 1) опухоль; 2) объем; |
| <i>carcino-</i> | cancer, cri m | cancer; | рак, раковая опухоль; |
| <i>myelo-, -myelia</i> | medulla spinalis; medulla ossium | spinal cord/ marrow; bone-marrow; | спинной мозг или костный мозг; |
| <i>masto-</i> | mamma, ae f | mammary gland; | женская грудь, молочная железа; |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| <i>oto-, otia</i> | auris, is f | ear; | ухо; |
| <i>ophthalmo-, -ophthalmia</i> | oculus, i m | eye; | глаз; |
| <i>sphygmo-, -sphygmia</i> | pulsus, us m | pulse; | пульс; |
| <i>gyno-, -gynaeco</i> | femina, ae f femininus, a, um | woman; female; | женщина, женский; |
| <i>andro-, -andria</i> | mas, maris m; masculus, a, um; vir, viri m | man; male; | мужчина, мужской; |
| <i>paedio-, paedo-, -paedia</i> | infans, ntis m, f | infant, infantile; methods of correcting disorders, deformities; | ребенок, дитя, детский; методы исправления нарушений, деформаций; |
| <i>geri-, gero-, geronto- topo- pharmaco-</i> | senex, senis m; senilis, e locus, i m medicamentum, i n | old person; senile; place; drug; | старик, старческий; место; лекарство; |

COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING FUNCTIONAL AND PATHOLOGICAL DISORDERS

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
| <i>bio-</i> | life, life processes; | жизнь, жизненные процессы; |
| <i>-pnoë, pnoea</i> | breath; | дыхание; |
| <i>geno-, -genēsis, -genesia, -genia</i> | generation, origin, development; | рождение, порождение, происхождение, развитие, генез; |
| <i>aesthesio-, -aesthesia</i> | feeling, sensitivity; | чувство, ощущение; чувствительность; |
| <i>astheno-</i> | weakness; | слабость, ослабление, астения; |
| <i>spiro-</i> | related to respiration; | относящийся к дыханию, дыхательный; |

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <i>pneumo-, pneumato- aëro- -kinesia, kinemato-, kinemo-, kineto- -crin-, -crinia</i> | air inside an organ; | воздух, газ, находящийся в органе; |
| <i>-penia</i> | shortage /deficit/ decrease of (mostly blood cells); | недостаток, уменьшение количества, главным образом, кровяных телец; |
| <i>-cytosis</i> | increase in the number of cells; | повышение содержания количества клеток в сравнении с нормой; |
| <i>-rhoea</i> | discharge of liquid / secretion; | течение, истечение секрета или жидкости; |
| <i>-rhagia</i> | hemorrhage from the vessels of an organ; | кровотечение из сосудов какого-либо органа; |
| <i>-stasis</i> | controlling; stagnation, congestion; | застой, естественная остановка, стаз (крови, желчи, мочи, слюны); |
| <i>tono-, -tonia</i> | tone, pressure; | напряжение, тонус; |
| <i>-plasia</i> | formation, development; | образование, развитие ткани, клеток, органов; |
| <i>-tensio</i> | tension; | гидростатическое давление в сосудах, полых органах; |
| <i>-tropho-, -trophia</i> | related to the nourishment and development of organs, tissues; | относящийся к питанию или зависящий от него, от кровоснабжения органов и тканей; |
| <i>oxy-, -oxia</i> | related to oxygen; | 1) окисленный; 2) относящийся к кислороду; |
| <i>phago-, phagia</i> | 1) swallowing; eating; | 1) глотание; 2) поедание, поглощение; |
| <i>philo-, philia</i> | predisposition for something; | склонность, предрасположение к чему-либо; любовь; |
| <i>phobo-, -phobia</i> | fear of something; | боязнь; болезненное отвращение к чему-либо; |

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| tropo-, -tropia | affecting something; | направление, направленность; действующий на что-либо; |
| psycho-, -psychia | psychic (related to the human soul); | относящийся к душевным, духовным свойствам, к психике. |

NB! When combined with the name of an organ **pneumo-** denotes «*presence of air in this organ*». If the term includes **-graphia**, then **pneumo-** means «*introduction of a gas into an organ*» to perform contrast radiography. The stems **pneumon-** and seldom **-pneum-** are used to denote the lung.

NB! The initial **haemo-** or **haemato-** joined to the name of an organ means «*bleeding in this organ's cavity*». Moreover, the name of an organ is used, as a rule, in the Nominative Case without any suffixes (**haematocolpos**). Terms indicating *collection of fluid or pus in the organ's cavity* are built in the similar way (**hydrometra** – fluid in the uterus).

EXERCISES

1. Make up the clinical terms in writing:

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. -uria | blood in urine; |
| 2. -aemia | urine in blood; |
| 3. py- | pus in urine; |
| 4. haemo- | treatment with the help of blood; |
| 5. haemato- | a science about blood and blood-producing organs; |
| 6. -aemia | sugar (glyk-)/glucose in the blood; |
| NB! anaemia | decreased number of erythrocytes; |
| 7. chondro- | a disease of bones and cartilages; |
| 8. -cele | stomach hernia; |
| 9. neuro- | a specialist in nervous system diseases; |
| 10. ot- | a pain in the ear; |
| 11. dermat- | skin inflammation; |
| 12. adeno- | tightening of a gland; |
| 13. angi- | dilation of a vessel; |
| 14. phleb- | inflammation of veins resulting in thrombus formation; |
| 15. onco- | a science about tumours; |
| 16. masto- | a disease of the mammary gland; |

17. *gynaeco-* a science about women's diseases;
 18. *pharmaco-* a science about medicines.

2. Explain the meanings of the derivational morphemes in the words below:

Haematoma (circumscribed accumulation of blood in tissues), haemostasis, haemarthrosis, haemotherapia, haemangioma, haematologia, anaemia, toxoemia, haemophilia, cholaemia, uraemia, pyaemia, pyorrhoea, pyothorax, pyuria, pyoderma, lymphocytus, lympho(cyto)penia, ureteritis, myoma, myoblastus, myoblastoma, myocardium, chondroblastus, hidradenitis, anhidrosis, neuritis, neuritis, lithotomia, cholelithiasis, geriatrics, myelopathia, myelodysplasia, ophthalmologia, odontorrhagia, gerontology, gynaecologia, oncogenesis, odontolithus.

3. Build clinical terms in writing:

1. *bio-* a science about microorganisms;
NB! biopsia examination of the living tissue with the help of a microscope;
2. *-pnoë* normal breathing / respiration;
3. *-genesis* tissue generation, development;
4. *-aesthesia* disrupted sensitivity;
5. *-asthenia* nervous weakness;
- NB! spirometria** measuring the volume of the air in lungs;
6. *pneumo-* air in the thorax;
7. *-kinesia* absence of movement (kinetic function);
- NB! endocrinologia** a science about diseases of internal secretion glands;
8. *-penia* shortage of white blood cells;
9. *-cytosis* increased number of white blood cells;
10. *-rhoea* discharge of pus from the ear;
- NB! diarrhoea** diarrhea;
11. *-rhagia* liver hemorrhage;
- NB! haemostasis** arresting hemorrhage;
12. *tono-* blood pressure measuring;
13. *-plasia* malformation of an organ / tissue;
14. *-trophia* insufficient tissue / organ nourishment, development;
15. *-phagia* swallowing the air;

16. *-philia* predisposition for hemorrhage;
 17. *-phobia* fear of women;
 18. *-tropus* affecting muscles;
 19. *psycho -* 1) affecting psychic processes;
 2) a science about psychic diseases and their treatment;
 20. *-stasis* congestion of blood (arresting hemorrhage).

4. Translate the word-combinations into Latin:

Retropharyngeal abscess, senile psychosis, renal anuria, chronic tonsillitis, intra-arterial anesthesia, post-traumatic glaucoma, acute hematogenous osteomyelitis, hepatocellular jaundice, intrauterine infection, subcutaneous injection.

UNIT 5

**COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING
 VARIOUS PROPERTIES,
 QUALITIES AND RELATIONS**

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

| <i>Greek</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|----------------------|---------------------------|---|
| <i>auto-</i> | 1) own; 2) automatic; | 1) сам, тот же самый, свой, собственный; 2) автоматический; |
| <i>allo-</i> | other, different; | другой, иной, измененный, необычный; |
| <i>hetero-</i> | different, heterogeneous; | один из двух, другой, непохожий; соотв. русск. <i>разно-</i> ; |
| <i>homeo-, homo-</i> | similar, same; | сходный, одинаковый, тождественный; |
| <i>iso-</i> | equal, similar; | равный, соразмерный, одинаковый; |
| <i>aniso-</i> | unequal; | неравный, несообразный; |
| <i>neo-</i> | new; | новый, молодой; вновь созданный или возникший; |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| tele-, teleo-, telo- | 1) distant; 2) ending; | 1) отдаленный (в пространстве и во времени); 2) окончание, завершение; |
| atelo- pseudo- | incomplete; false, pseudo-; | неполный; ложный, мнимый; соответствует русским <i>ЛОЖНО-, ЛЖЕ-</i> ; |
| ortho- | 1) straight, vertical; 2) right; | 1) прямой, вертикально направленный; 2) правильный, соответствующий нормальному положению; |
| xero- cryo- | dry; related to cold / freezing; | сухой; относящийся к холоду, низкой температуре, замерзанию; |
| thermo-, -thermia | warm; heat; | теплый; относящийся к температуре; |
| pyr-, pyro-, pyreto- | fever; | жар; лихорадочное состояние; |
| macro- micro- megalo-, -megalia oligo- | big ; small; large; small, insufficient; | большой, крупный; малый, маленький; большой, увеличенный; малый, незначительный, недостаточный; |
| poly- | a great number of / multiple; | много, множество; больше, чем в норме; |
| pan-, panto- brachy- brady- tachy-, tacho- chroma-, chromato- leuco- | whole, all; short; slow; quick, fast; colour; 1) white; 2) related to leucocytes; | все, весь, целиком; короткий, укороченный; медленный, замедленный; быстрый, скорый, частый; 1) цвет, окраска; 2) относящийся к хрому; 1) белый; 2) относящийся к лейкоцитам; |
| erythro- | 1) red; 2) related to erythrocytes; | 1) красный; 2) относящийся к эритроцитам; |

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--|
| cyano- | 1) dark blue; | 1) темно-синий, синюшный; 2) относящийся к синильной кислоте; |
| melano- | 1) black; | 1) темный, черный; 2) содержащий меланин; |
| glyco-, gluco- | sweet; glucose; | сладкий; наличие сахара; глюкоза; |
| polio- | grey; | 1) серый; 2) относящийся к серому веществу головного мозга. |

NB! When combined with *-plastica* and *-transplantatio* initial **auto-**, **allo-**, **xeno-** may have the following meanings: **auto-** *using tissues or organs within the same organism*; **allo-** *using tissues and organs of other people*; **xeno-** *using tissues and organs of animals*.

EXERCISES

1. Explain the following terms:

Alloplastica, autoplastica, heterotopia, xerodermia, orthopaedia, pseudostenōsis, orthopnoë, melanodermia, leucodermia, melanōma, melanomatōsis, cyanodermia, oligophrenia, hemiparēsis, poliomyelītis, tachycardia, bradycardia, neoplasma, panophthalmītis, pachymeninx, leptomeninx, dolichocephalia, allergia, thermoplegia, acromegalia, neonatologia, hyperglycaemia, xerophthalmia, brachyphalangia, splanchnomegalia.

2. Build clinical terms in writing:

1. **-ectomia** removal of the mammary gland;
2. **geronto-** science about old age;
3. **mast-** pain in the mammary gland;
4. **-oxia** decreased content of oxygen in blood;
5. **xero-** dry skin;
6. **-uria** disorder of urination;
7. **-gnathia** small upper jaw;
8. **micro-** small lower jaw;
9. **-rhagia** uterine bleeding;
10. **-aesthesia** increased sensitivity;
11. **dys-** disturbed sensitivity;

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 12. <i>-pnoë</i> | respiratory disorder (shortness of breath); |
| 13. <i>-cardia</i> | fast heart beat; |
| 14. <i>metr-</i> | complete removal of the uterus; |
| 15. <i>-penia</i> | low count of erythrocytes in blood; |
| 16. <i>cysto-</i> | examination of the urinary bladder; |
| 17. <i>leuco-</i> | increased count of leucocytes in blood; |
| 18. <i>-trophia</i> | nutritional disorder; |
| 19. <i>-tensio</i> | increased hydrostatic pressure; |
| 20. <i>-cheilia</i> | dry lips; |
| 21. <i>metro-</i> | prolapse of the uterus; |
| 22. <i>cholecysto-</i> | X-ray examination of the gallbladder. |

2. Build Latin terms for the following:

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. <i>cryo-</i> | treating with cold; |
| 2. <i>tele-</i> | transmitting feelings and thoughts to a distant person; |
| 3. <i>ortho-</i> | correction of dental deformities; |
| 4. <i>thermo-</i> | body temperature measuring; |
| 5. <i>macro-</i> | abnormally large head; |
| 6. <i>micro-</i> | abnormally small head; |
| 7. <i>poly-</i> | multiple inflammation of joints; |
| 8. <i>olig-</i> | small amount of urine, insufficient urination; |
| 9. <i>brady-</i> | slow heartbeat; |
| 10. <i>tachy-</i> | fast breathing; |
| 11. <i>erythro-</i> | fear of red colour; |
| 12. <i>polio-</i> | inflammation of grey spinal marrow. |

UNIT 6

REVISION

The aim of this Revision Unit is to systematize the studied material and to prepare for the final test on the Clinical terminology.

1. Name both Greek and Latin stems for the following:

Head, lung, muscle, cartilage, joint, vertebra, nerve, vessel, vein, stomach, womb, spleen, bone, bone marrow, spinal marrow, tissue, cell, leg, foot, gland, lymph, chest, rectum, abdomen, heart, mouth, eye, ear, nose, tooth, kidney,

mammary gland, vagina, ovary, urinary bladder, gallbladder, upper jaw, lower jaw, chin, palate, gum.

2. Translate the following terms in writing:

Juvenile progressive paralysis, gangrenous stomatitis, gangrenous adenitis, infectious adenitis, submandibular adenitis, hepatocellular adenoma, serous adenofibroma, subcutaneous emphysema, atrophic emphysema, hematogenic cholangitis, ventricular tachycardia, serous periodontitis.

3. Explain the meaning of the terms below:

Hypaesthesia, cholangioenterostomia, chylothorax, anhidrosis, erythrocytus, bradypnoë, tachypnoë, osteoarthritis, lymphadenitis, lymphorrhoea, chylostasis, oligophrenia, hyperkinesia, psychotherapia, xerophthalmia, cryotherapia, cryochirurgia, paracystitis, phlebotensiometria, otorhoea, osteodystrophia, osteomyelitis, periodontitis, parofitis, rhinorrhagia, sialadenitis, gnathoplastica, glossoptosis, xerostomia, glossoplegia.

4. Construct Latin terms with the following meanings:

1. Hemorrhage from the stomach;
2. Pus in the blood (septicemia due to pyogenic organisms);
3. Inflammation of the skin;
4. High blood pressure;
5. Enlargement of the liver;
6. Removal of the spleen;
7. Pain in a cartilage;
8. Softening of any cartilage;
9. X-ray examination of the bile duct;
10. Inflammation of the mucous membrane of the mouth.

UNIT 7

THE FINAL TESTS ON THE CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Fulfill the final tests on Clinical Terminology in written form:

Variant 1

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

osteoarthritis, meloplastica, laparotomia, gynaecologia, xerodermia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

treatment with the help of blood; disease of teeth; softening of cartilage; fear of women.

3. Name both Greek and Latin stems for the following:

head, lung, abdomen, heart, body, blood.

Variant 2

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

osteologia, odontalgia, gastrectasia, myocardium, thermoplegia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

blood in urine; disease of brain; fixation of spleen; affecting muscles.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

muscle, cartilage, ear, nose, joint, cell.

Variant 3

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

stomatologia, glossalgia, metroplastica, pyodermia, hyperglycaemia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

sugar (glyk-)/glucose in the blood; treatment of teeth; putting a rhapshe on spleen; liver hemorrhage.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

joint, vertebra, tooth, kidney, tongue, lymph node.

Variant 4

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

otalgia, encephalogramma, gastroenterologia, haemotherapia, alloplastica.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

pus in urine; X-ray examination of vertebra; placing a new opening on colon; a science about psychic diseases and their treatment.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

chest, rectum, vertebra, inner organs, foot, vessel.

Variant 5

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

pathologia, gnathoplastica, pneumonopexia, myōma, cyanodermia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

a science about blood and blood-producing organs; toothache; softening of bone; predisposition for hemorrhage.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

foot, gland, mouth, cheek, hand, vein.

Variant 6

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

chiroscopia, spondylodynia, enteroptosis, neuritis, autoplastica.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

a disease of bones and cartilages; heartache; dissection of kidney; discharge of pus from the ear.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

cell, leg, joint, head, palate, skin.

Variant 7

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

somatoscopia, gnathodynia, spondylotomia, cholaemia, melanodermia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

pain in the ear; examination of body; removal of uterus; increased number of white blood cells.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

bone marrow, tissue, lung, nose, spinal column, urine.

Variant 8

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

cardiographia, odontogenus, chondromalacia, gerontologia, acromegalia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

skin inflammation; examination of nose; dissection of abdomen; a science about diseases of internal secretion glands.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

bone, spinal marrow, stomach, kidney, gum, bile.

Variant 9

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

rhinologia, osteogenus, hydrotherapia, ophthalmologia, tachycardia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

a science about tumours; examination of mouth; prolapse of inner organs; air in the thorax.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

womb, spleen, gallbladder, lower jaw, cheek, stone.

Variant 10

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

arthropathia, cheilodynia, osteomalacia, uraemia, xerophthalmia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

a disease of the mammary gland; kidney prolapse; ; disease of nose; nervous weakness.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

nerve, vessel, urinary bladder, upper jaw, tooth, poison.

Variant 11

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

spondylographia, podalgia, splanchnologia, toxaemia, orthopnoë.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

dilation of a vessel; disease of joints; fixation of kidney; a science about microorganisms.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

vein, stomach, eye, palate, lower jaw, woman.

Variant 12

1. Explain the meaning of the terms:

cardiogramma, gonalgia, intestinoplastica, haematologia, leucodermia.

2. Build terms with the given meaning:

urine in blood; disease of extremities; fixation of colon; fear of water.

3. Name both Greek and Latin duplicates for the following:

mouth, mammary gland, chin, gum, tongue.

SECTION III

PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

The skills trained in this section are as follows:

- writing Latin pharmaceutical terms without grammatical or spelling mistakes;
- writing out a Latin prescription quickly and without mistakes or translating a Latin prescription into English.

The active words which are to be studied in this cycle include the names of medicinal herbs, drugs, chemical substances, names of medicinal forms, Greek and Latin stems which are used for formation of the names of drugs.

Pharmaceutical terminology is based on the Latin and Greek languages. The word «pharmaceutical» has its origin from the Greek word «pharmakon», which is translated as «remedy, drug».

Pharmaceutical terminology also studies the problems of terminology, which are connected with the prescription: the part of prescription, the structure of pharmaceutical term etc.

To understand pharmaceutical principles it is necessary to know the basic pharmaceutical terms:

- «*Drug (Remedy)*» is the substance or mixture of substances used for medical treatment, preventing and diagnostics of the illnesses.
- «*Medicinal substance*» is the drug, which is a chemical compound or biological matter.
- «*Medicinal vegetation materials*» is the vegetation materials allowed for medical use.
- «*Medicinal (drug) form*» is a form, which is given to the mixture of substances or to the medicinal vegetation materials, prepared at a pharmaceutical factory, taken in a certain dosage and helping to reach the necessary therapeutical effect.
- «*Medicinal preparation*» is the drug in definite medicinal form.
- «*Functional substance*» is a component of drug, which renders the therapeutical, preventive and diagnostical actions.
- «*Combine drugs*» are the drugs consisting of one medicinal form, including some functional substances in fixed doses.

The vocabulary of the exercises embraces the terms used by practicing physicians and surgeons while prescribing drugs, reading drug annotations, pharmacopoeia and so on.

UNIT 1

DRUG NAMES, STANDARDS

The field of medicine, which studies drugs, their nature, origin, and effect in the body, is called **pharmacology**. Drugs are chemical substances used in medicine in the treatment of diseases. Drugs are obtained from various parts of plants, such as the roots, leaves, and fruit. Examples of such drugs are digitalis (from the foxglove plant), and antibiotics such as penicillin and streptomycin (from plants called molds). Drugs can also be obtained from animals (hormones are secretions from the glands of animals). Drugs can be made from chemical substances, which are synthesized in the laboratory (anticancer drugs, such as methotrexate and prednisone). Some drugs are contained in food substances (vitamins). Drugs are dispensed and stored in pharmacy.

Names

A drug can have three different names. The **chemical name** is the chemical formula for the drug. This name is often long and complicated.

The generic or official name is a shorter, less complicated name, which is recognized as identifying the drug for legal and scientific purpose. The generic name is public property and any drug manufacturer may use it. There is only one generic name for each drug.

The **brand name** or **trade name** is the private property of the individual drug manufacturer and no competitor may use it. Most drugs have several brand names because each manufacturer producing the drug gives it a different name. When a physician orders a specific brand name on a prescription, the pharmacist must dispense it; no other brand name may be substituted. It is common practice to capitalize the first letter of a brand name.

The following lists give the chemical, generic, and brand names of the well-known antibiotic drug, ampicillin. Note that the drug can have several brand names, but only one generic, or official, name.

| <i>Chemical Name</i> | <i>Generic Name</i> | <i>Brand Name</i> |
|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| alpha-aminobenzyl P | ampicillin | Amcill capsules Omnipen Penbritin Polycillin Principen/N |

Standards

There are definite standards for drugs set by an independent committee of physicians, pharmacologists, pharmacists, and manufacturers, which is called the **Pharmacopoeia**. A special guide on drugs under the same name is issued.

Two important standards stipulated in the pharmacopoeia are that the drug must be clinically useful (useful for patients) and available in pure form (made by good manufacturing methods). A list of drugs is published regularly and in different countries may go under different names.

UNITS COMMONLY USED IN GENERIC DRUG NAMES

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

Latin

-alg-, -dol-

-aesthes-

-chol-

-cid-

-cor-, -card-

-myco-

-pres(s)-, -ten(s)-

-pyr-

-sed-

-sept-

-test-, vir-, -andr-

-thyr-

-vas-, -angi-

Meaning

analgesic;

anesthetic;

bile expelling;

antimicrobial;

cardiac (for heart diseases);

antifungal;

hypotensive;

antipyretic (for bringing down fever);

sedative;

antiseptic;

androgenic;

affecting thyroid gland;

vasodilating, spasmolytic.

Latin

-sulfa-

-cillin-

-mycin-

-cyclin-

-ceph- (-cef-, -cep-)

-barb-

-cain-

-cort-

Pharmacological Classification

antimicrobial sulfanilamides;

penicillin antibiotics;

antibiotics produced by the fungi of *Streptomyces*;

antibiotics derived from tetracycline;

antibiotics produced by *Cephalosporum*;

barbiturates (sleeping drugs);

local anesthetics;

corticosteroids (adrenal hormones);

-oestr- estrogenic;
-andr-, -ster- androgenic.

NB! The suffix **-as-** is used in names of enzymes: *Lidasum*, *Ribonucleasum*, *Cocarboxylasum*.

DOSAGE FORMS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Description</i> |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <i>aërosolum, i n</i> | aerosol | a medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system obtained with the help of special packaging; |
| <i>granulum, i n</i> | granule | a solid medicinal form in the form of grain or granule; |
| <i>gutta, ae f</i> | drop | is intended for internal or external use in the form of drops; |
| <i>unguentum, i n</i> | unguent, ointment | soft medicinal form of viscous consistence; |
| <i>linimentum, i n</i> | liniment | a liquid ointment; |
| <i>pasta, ae f</i> | paste | an ointment with the content of powdery substances over 20–25 %; |
| <i>emplastrum, i n</i> | plaster | a medicinal form in the form of plastic mixture softening at body temperature and adhering to skin; intended for external use; |
| <i>suppositorium, i n</i> | suppository | a medicinal form which is solid at room temperature and expands or dissolves at body temperature; it is introduced into the body cavity. If introduced per rectum it is called a <i>suppository</i> . If it has a round shape for introducing into the vagina it is called <i>globulus vaginalis – vaginal pellet</i> ; |
| <i>pulvis, ëris m</i> | powder | a medicinal form intended for internal, external use or for injections (after dissolving in a corresponding solvent); |

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|--|
| <i>tabuleta, ae f</i> | tablet | a dosed medicinal form obtained by pressing the medicinal substance or a mixture of medicinal and accessory substances: intended for internal, external use or for injections (after dissolving in a corresponding solvent); |
| <i>tabuleta obducta</i> | coated tablet | a tablet with coating, which localizes the target area, improves the taste, storage ability and appearance; |
| <i>dragee</i> | dragee | a solid dosed medicinal form obtained by layering medicinal and accessory substances on granules; |
| <i>solutio, ōnis f</i> | solution | a medicinal form obtained by dissolving one or more medicinal substances; intended for internal or external use or injections; |
| <i>suspensio, ōnis f</i> | suspension | a fluid medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system where a solid substance is suspended in fluid; intended for internal or external use or injections; |
| <i>emulsum, i n</i> | emulsion | a fluid medicinal form in the form of a dispersion system combining two mutually insoluble fluids; intended for internal or external use or injections; |
| <i>pilula, ae f</i> | pill | a solid dosed medicinal form in the form of a ball (weight 0.1–0.5 g) containing medicinal and accessory substances; |
| <i>tinctura, ae f</i> | tincture | a medicinal form in the form of alcohol, alcohol-ether or alcohol-water clear extract from medicinal raw material; intended for internal or external use; |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <i>infusum, i n</i> | infusion | a medicinal form in the form of watery extract from medicinal raw material; intended for internal or external use; |
| <i>decoctum, i n</i> | decoction | an infusion with a different extraction technique; |
| <i>sirūpus, i m</i> | syrup | a sweet fluid medicinal form intended for internal use; |
| <i>species, ēi f</i> (<i>species, ērum pl</i>) | tea | a mixture of several kinds of broken down or entire medicinal raw material (herbs) for making infusions or decoctions; |
| <i>capsula, ae f</i> <i>c. gelatinosa</i> | capsule gelatin capsule | dosed medicinal form in the form of coated drugs (coated with gelatin, starch or capsule another biopolymer); intended for internal use; |
| <i>c. amylacea seu oblata</i> | amylaceous/ starch capsule/ cachet; | |
| <i>membranula ophthalmica seu lamella ophthalmica</i> | film for treating eyes; | a medicinal form in the form of polymer film as a substitute for eye drops; |
| <i>extractum, i n</i> | extract | is obtained by aqueous or alcoholic extraction from the crude drug. |

NAMES OF VEGETATION MATERIALS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>cortex, icis m</i> | cortex, bark | кора |
| <i>flos, floris m</i> | flower | цветок |
| <i>folium, i n</i> | leaf | лист |
| <i>fructus, us m</i> | fruit | плод |
| <i>gemma, ae f</i> | gemma, bud | почка |
| <i>herba, ae f</i> | herb | травя |
| <i>radix, icis f</i> | root | корень |
| <i>rhizoma, atis n</i> | rhizome | корневище |
| <i>semen, inis n</i> | seed | семя |

MEDICINAL HERBS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Calendula, ae f</i> | Marigold | календула (ноготки) |
| <i>Convallaria, ae f</i> | lily-of the-valley | ландыш |
| <i>Eucalyptus, i f</i> | eucalyptus, gum-tree | эвкалипт |
| <i>Mentha (ae f) piperita (us, a, um)</i> | pepper mint | мята перечная |
| <i>Salvia, ae f</i> | Sage | шалфей |
| <i>Valeriana, ae f</i> | Valerian | валериана |

MEDICINES

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Adrenalinum, i n</i> | adrenalin | адреналин |
| <i>Amidopyrinum, i n</i> | amidopyrine | амидопирин |
| <i>Dibazolium, i n</i> | dibazol | дибазол |
| <i>Ichthyolum, i n</i> | ichthammol (ammonium ichthosulfonate) | ихтиол |
| <i>Norsulfazolum, i n</i> | norsulfazol | норсульфазол |
| <i>Novocainum, i n</i> | novocain | новокаин |
| <i>oleum (i, n) Ricini (us, i, m)</i> | castor oil | касторовое масло (масло клещевины) |
| <i>Papaverinum, i n</i> | papaverine | папаверин |
| <i>Sulfadimezinum, i n</i> | sulfadimine | сульфадимезин |
| <i>Xeroformium, i n</i> | xeroform | ксероформ |

MISCELLANEOUS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| <i>rectificatus, a, um</i> | purified (in combination with oleum Terebinthinae and spiritus) | очищенный (в сочетании с oleum Terebinthinae и spiritus) |
| <i>spiritus, us m</i> | alcohol, spiritus | спирт |
| <i>spirituosus, a, um</i> | alcoholic, spirituous (adj.) | спиртовой |

EXERCISES

1. Read and explain units commonly used in generic names of drugs:

Cephalexin, Valocordinum, Aëvitum, Testoenatum, Cocarboxylasum, Finalgon, Rifothyroinum, Erythromycinum, Valosedan, Polyoestradiolum, Pharyngosept, Mycosolon, Chlorophthalmum, Methicillinum, Kanamycinum, Phenobarbitalum, Cholosasum, Pyocidum, Norsulfazolum, Urodanum, Adrenalinum seu Epinephrinum, Novocainum, Panangin, Quadevitum, Allergysin, Funginal, Synoestrolum, Glucosum, Asthmatinum, Anaesthesinum, Hydrocortisonum.

2. Translate into English:

Herba Convallariae, flores Calendulae, infusum foliorum Eucalypti, folium Menthae piperitae, infusum foliorum Menthae, tinctura Valerianae, folia Salviae, tabulettae extracti Valerianae obductae.

UNIT 2

MOST COMMON PRESCRIPTION FORMULAS

In Latin after the prepositions, the nouns and adjectives are written in the Accusative and Ablative cases only:

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>in ampullis</i> | in ampoules; | в ампулах; |
| <i>in capsulis</i> | in capsules; | в капсулах; |
| <i>in capsulis gelatinosis</i> | in gelatine capsules; | в желатиновых капсулах; |
| <i>in capsulis amylaceis seu in oblatis</i> | in cachets; | в крахмальных капсулах (в облатках); |
| <i>in spritz-tubulis</i> | in syrettes, in unit dose syringes; | в шприц-тюбиках; |
| <i>in tabulettis</i> | in tablets; | в таблетках; |
| <i>in tabulettis obductis</i> | in coated tablets; | в таблетках, покрытых оболочкой; |
| <i>in vitro</i> | in vitro, in a test-tube; | в склянке (пробирке); |
| <i>in vitro nigro</i> | in a dark test-tube/vial; | в темной склянке; |
| <i>per os</i> | orally; | через рот; |

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>per rectum</i> | rectally, through the rectum; | через прямую кишку; |
| <i>contra tussim</i> | against cough; | против кашля; |
| <i>pro die</i> | daily dose; | доза на день; |
| <i>pro dosi</i> | single dose; | разовая доза (на один прием); |
| <i>pro infantibus</i> | for children; | для детей; |
| <i>pro inhalatione</i> | for inhalation; | для ингаляции; |
| <i>pro injectionibus</i> | for injections; | для инъекций; |
| <i>pro narcosi</i> | for anesthesia; | для наркоза; |
| <i>pro roentgēno</i> | for X-ray examination; | для рентгенографии; |

VERBS USED IN PRESCRIPTION

Memorize the verbs, which are used in prescriptions:

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--|---|---|
| <i>Recīpe.</i> | Take. | Возьми. |
| <i>Misce.</i> | Mix. | Смешай. |
| <i>Da.</i> | Give out. | Выдай. |
| <i>Signa.</i> | Indicate. | Обозначь. |
| <i>Sterilīsa!</i> | Sterilize! | Простерилизуй! |
| <i>Repēte.</i> | Repeat. | Повтори. |
| <i>Da tales doses numēro...</i> | Give out such doses in the amount of ... | Выдай такие дозы числом. ... |
| <i>Misce, ut fiat (Sing.)... fiat (Plur.)...</i> | Mix, so that there is... Mix, let it be turned into... | Смешай, чтобы получился (пусть получится)... |
| <i>Misce, fiat (Sing.)... fiat (Plur.) ...</i> | | |

ADVERBS USED IN PRESCRIPTION

Cito! – Very quickly!

Statim! – Immediately!

ana – equally, in equal measure;

quantum satis – as much as suffices, as much as needed, as much as necessary.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin:

«Aevit» in capsules; tablets against cough; suppositories with benadryl for children; ether for anesthesia; benadryl solution in unit dose syringes; validol in tablets; gramicidine alcoholic solution in ampoules; castor oil in gelatine capsules, furaciline solution for external use (ad usum externum); amidopyrine and phenacetine tablets; diprophylline solution in ampoules; dibazol solution for injections; ampicilline powder for suspension; pure castor oil; rhizomes with roots of valerian.

2. Translate into English:

Aether pro narcosi, aqua destillata pro injectionibus, oleum Ricini in capsulis, Tetracyclinum in tabulettis obductis, infusum foliorum Salviae, oleum Menthae piperitae, unguentum Ichthyoli ad usum externum, solutio Novocaini in ampullis, suppositoria per rectum, sirupus pro infantibus, tinctura contra tussim.

3. Translate into Latin:

1) Mix 10 milliliters of Valerian tincture and 15 milliliters of lily-of-the-valley tincture; 2) Sterilize 20 millilitres of castor oil! 3) Da 25 grams of Synthomycin emulsion; 4) Sterilize 5 millilitres of Dibazol solution! 5) Da in vitro nigro.

UNIT 3

PRESCRIPTION

The word «**prescription**» comes from the Latin participle «receptum» and it is translated as «received», «obtained».

The prescription is the doctor's written instructions to the pharmacist about the preparation, dispensing and administration of a drug. The prescription is an important legal document that has to be filled in according to certain rules. The prescription is written on a special blank without corrections.

The prescription usually has the following sections:

- Inscriptio – the name of medical establishment;
- Datum – date of writing out the prescription;
- Nomen aegroti – the patient's surname and initials;
- Aetas aegroti – the patient's age;
- Nomen medici – the doctor's name and initials;
- Praescriptio – name and dosage of drug;

- Subscriptio – instructions to the pharmacist about dosage, dispensing or packaging of the drug;
- Signatura – instructions to the patient about the administration of the drug;
- Nomen et sigillum personale medici – the doctor’s signature and personal stamp.

The Model of Prescription

Rp. Ichthammol 10,0
 Lanolin 45,0
 Yellow soft Paraffin 45,0
 Mix, so that there is an ointment.
 Give out.
 Indicate: Apply twice-daily to affected skin.

Recīpe: Ichthyoli 10,0
 Lanolini 45,0
 Vaselini flavi 45,0
 Misce, fiat unguentum
 Da.
 Signa: Apply twice-daily to affected skin.

Rules of Writing out a Prescription

The Latin part of the prescription begins with the imperative **Recīpe**.

Each ingredient is written on a separate line, beginning with a capital letter.

The names of plants, chemical substances, drugs, verbs are written with the capital letters, too.

Each name of medicinal substance is written in the Genitive case, because it depends on the quantity of the substance (except **the tablets, suppositories, dragees, ophthalmic films and medicinal leeches**). Dosage is written in the Accusative case.

The dosage of medicinal substance is prescribed in **grams** or parts of a gram: decigrams, centigrams, milligrams. The word **gram** is omitted. Grams are indicated by the Arabic ciphers (1.0 0.1 0.01 0.001), e.g.:

Recīpe: Unguenti Zinci 30.0

If a fluid medicinal substance is prescribed in an amount less than 1 ml, the dosage is indicated in **drops**. The word **drop** is written in Roman ciphers, which are standing after the word **drop**:

1 drop – ***guttam I*** (Accusative Singular);
2, 3... drops – ***guttas II, III...*** (Accusative Plural).

Recipe: Olei Menthae piperitae guttas X

Recipe: Solutionis Aminazini hydrochloridi 0.1% guttam I

The fluid medicinal preparations are dosed in millilitres, e.g.:

Recipe: Oxytocini 5ml

In prescribing antibiotics, the dosage is usually indicated in international Units of Action (UA), e.g.:

Recipe: Benzylpenicillini-natrii 250,000 UA

If two or more medicinal agents are prescribed in the same amount, the dose is indicated only once after the last one and preceded by the word ***ana*** (*equally, in equal measure*), e.g.:

Recipe: Tincturae Valerianae

Tincturae Convallariae ana 10 ml

Combination drugs are often given a generic name written in inverted commas: *tablettae* “***Codterpinum***”, *suppositoria* “***Neo-anusolum***”. The generic names of pills and suppositories are in the Nominative Singular. The dose is not indicated as it is standard.

When pills or suppositories are prescribed the name of the medicinal form is written in the Accusative Plural (*tablettas, tablettas obductas, suppositoria, suppositoria rectalia*) as it is grammatically subordinate to the word *Recipe*, not to the dose, e.g.:

Recipe: Tablettas Monomycini 0.25 numero 50

Da. Signa:

The name of the medicinal form (pill, suppository) can be written in the Accusative Singular (*tablettam, suppositorium*). In this case, the standard formula *Da tales doses numero...* will be found at the end, e.g.:

Recipe: Tablettam Digoxini 0.0001

Da tales doses numero 12

Signa:

Recipe: Suppositorium cum Ichthyolo 0.2

Da tales doses numero 10

Signa:

The word «**Signa**» finishes the Latin part of the prescription. Further, the prescription is written in patient's language.

THE STRUCTURE OF MULTINOMINAL PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

In pharmaceutical terms if there are agreed or nonagreed attributes, the nonagreed attribute stands on the first place, after the defined word.

Scheme of Multinomial Term

| I | II | III |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| Name of medicinal form | Name of medicinal substance | Adjective |
| Nom. case | Gen. case | Nom. case |

Tablets

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| tabulettae Methionini obductae | coated tablets of methionin |

Extracts

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| extractum Aloës fluidum | liquid extract of aloe |
| extractum Aloës spissum | thick extract of aloe |
| extractum Aloës siccum | dry extract of aloe |

Tinctures and Solutions

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| tinctura Rhei amāra | bitter tincture of rhubarb |
| solutio Iodi spirituosa | spirituous solution of iodine |

Infusions and Decoctions

NB! When the names of infusions and decoctions are constructed, the part of the medicinal herb and its botanical name are given.

Latin
decoctum corticis Quercus

English
decoction of the cortex of oak

In prescription, the ratio of quantity of the medicinal herb and total quantity of the infusion or decoction is showed, e.g.:

Реcipe: Infusi foliōrum Digitalis 0,5-180 ml

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

MEDICINAL HERBS

| Latin | English | Russian |
|-------------------------|---|----------------------|
| <i>Aloë, ěs f</i> | aloe | алоэ, сабур |
| <i>Anīsum, i n</i> | anise | анис |
| <i>Belladonna, ae f</i> | banewort, deadly / great nightshade, death's herb, belladonna | белладонна, красавка |
| <i>Crataegus, i f</i> | hawthorn, maybush | боярышник |
| <i>Farfāra, ae f</i> | coltsfoot | мать-и-мачеха |
| <i>Frangula, ae f</i> | buckthorn, black alder | крушина |
| <i>Hypericum, i n</i> | St. John's worth | зверобой |
| <i>Leonūrus, i m</i> | motherwort | пустырник |
| <i>Rheum, i n</i> | rhubarb | ревень |
| <i>Urtīca, ae f</i> | stinging nettle | крапива |

MEDICINES

| Latin | English | Russian |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Aether, ěris m</i> | ether | эфир |
| <i>Barbitalum-natrium, i n</i> | barbital sodium | барбитал-натрий |
| <i>Cacao</i> | cocoa | какао |
| <i>Cordigitum, i n</i> | cordigit | кордигит |
| <i>Dimedrolum, i n</i> | benadryl, dimedrol | димедрол |
| <i>Euphyllinum, i n</i> | aminophylline | эуфиллин |
| <i>Furacilinum, i n</i> | furaciline | фурацилин |
| <i>Mentholum, i n</i> | menthol | ментол |
| <i>Nitroglycerinum, i n</i> | nitroglycerin | нитроглицерин |
| <i>Phenacetinum, i n</i> | phenacetine | фенацетин |

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| <i>Saccharum, i n</i> | sugar | сахар |
| <i>Tetracyclinum, i n</i> | tetracycline | тетрациклин |
| <i>Validolum, i n</i> | validol | валидол |

MISCELLANEOUS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>aethylicus, a, um</i> | ethylic | этиловый |
| <i>aqua, ae f</i> | water | вода |
| <i>destillatus, a, um</i> | distilled | дистиллированный |
| <i>fluidus, a, um</i> | fluid | жидкий |
| <i>obductus, a, um</i> | coated | покрытый оболочкой |
| <i>oleosus, a, um</i> | oily | масляный, в масле |
| <i>quantum satis</i> | as much as necessary | сколько нужно |
| <i>venenum, i n</i> | poison | яд |

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

1. Recīpe: Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycino
0,25 numero 12
Da. Signa:
2. Recīpe: Tincturae Convallariae
Tincturae Valerianae ana 10 ml
Solutionis Nitroglycerini 1% – 1 ml
Validoli 2 ml
Misce. Da. Signa:
3. Recīpe: Barbitali-natrii 0,5
Olei Cacao quantum satis, fiat suppositorium
Da tales doses numero 12
Signa:
4. Recīpe: Tabulettam Furacilini 0,02
Da tales doses numero 10
Signa:
5. Recīpe: Dragee “Revitum” numero 50
Da. Signa:
6. Recīpe: Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Florenalo numero 30
Da. Signa:

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Lily-of-the-valley tincture 10 ml

- Valerian tincture 20 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Ichthammol ointment 30 g
 Give out. Indicate:
 3. Take: Sage leaves 10 g
 Pepper mint leaves 20 g
 Mix, so that there is tea.
 Give out. Indicate:
 4. Take: Dibazol solution 5 ml
 Sterilize! Give out. Indicate:
 5. Take: Marigold flowers infusion 10 g – 200 ml
 Give out. Indicate:
 6. Take: Xeroform 1.2 g
 Castor oil 20 ml
 Mix, so that there is liniment.
 Give out. Indicate:

3. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Valerian tincture 0.3 g
 Hawthorn tincture 0.15 g
 Rhubarb tincture 0.8 g
 Barbitol-sodium 0.2 g
 Ethyl alcohol 20 ml
 Distilled water up to 200 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Fluid extract of hawthorn 25 ml
 Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Buckthorn bark
 Stinging nettle leaves each 15.0 g
 Pepper mint leaves
 Rhizomes of valerian roots each 5.0 g
 Mix, so that there is tea.
 Give out. Indicate:

4. Read, translate into English and explain grammatical and word-building structure of the pharmaceutical terms:

Unguentum Heparini, solutio Camphorae oleosa, extractum Crataegi fluidum, aqua destillata, spiritus aethylicus, decoctum corticis Frangulae, tinctura foliorum Urticae, tabulettae Furacilini, Streptocidum solubile, solutio Streptocidi solubilis; unguentum Tetracyclini ophthalmicum, remedia diuretica, solutio Glucosi, dragee “Aëvitum”, folium Farfarae, solutio Dicaini,

fructus Anisi, emplastrum Plumbi compositum, extractum Leonuri fluidum, suppositoria “Anaesthesolum”, tabuletæ Aloës obductæ.

5. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: 1% Synthomycline liniment with Novocain 0.5% 50.0
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Festal tablets in the amount of 60
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Lily-of-the-valley tincture
Valerian tincture both 10 ml
1% nitroglycerine solution 1 ml
Validol 2 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: 1% oily nitroglycerine solution 0.0005
Give out such doses in the amount of 29 in capsules
Indicate:
5. Take: Castor oil emulsion 180.0
Sugar syrup up to 200.0
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Amidopyrine
Phenacetine both 0.25g
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets
Indicate:

UNIT 4

CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE

All Latin names of chemical elements are neuter nouns of the second declension with the ending *-um* in Nominative Singular. An exception of the rule: **Sulfur**, *ŭris n* (III declension) and **Phosphorus**, *i m* (II declension). Chemical symbols are derived from Latin or Greek names of chemical elements and reflect their spelling: **Al** – *Aluminium*, **Fe** – *Ferrum*, **K** – *Kalium*, and others. In English-speaking countries the chemical elements **Na**, **Hg** and **K** can be called *Sodium*, *Mercurium* and *Potassium*, respectively.

NB! Remember the spelling of the following units commonly used in chemical nomenclature and drug names:

hydr- (Greek *water*) shows the presence of *hydrogen*, *water* or *hydroxylic* group: **Hydrocortisonum**, *i n*; **hydrochloridum**, *i n*;

ox(y)- (Greek *oxys*, *acid*) shows the presence of *oxygen*: **Oxylidinum**, *i n*; **Oxolinum**, *i n*; **peroxydum**, *i n*.

NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

| <i>Symbol</i> | <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------|--|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Al</i> | <i>Aluminium, i n</i> | aluminum | Алюминий |
| <i>Ag</i> | <i>Argentum, i n</i> | silver | Серебро |
| <i>As</i> | <i>Arsenicum, i n</i> | arsenic | Мышьяк |
| <i>Au</i> | <i>Aurum, i n</i> | aurum, gold | Золото |
| <i>B</i> | <i>Bromum, i n</i> | bromine | Бром |
| <i>Ba</i> | <i>Barium, i n</i> | barium | Барий |
| <i>Bi</i> | <i>Bismuthum, i n</i> | bismuth | Висмут |
| <i>C</i> | <i>Carboneum, i n</i> | carbon | Углерод |
| <i>Ca</i> | <i>Calcium, i n</i> | calcium | Кальций |
| <i>Cl</i> | <i>Chlorum, i n</i> | chlorine | Хлор |
| <i>Cu</i> | <i>Cuprum, i n</i> | cuprum, copper | Медь |
| <i>F</i> | <i>Fluorum, i n</i> <i>(Lat. seu Phthorum,</i> <i>i n (Gr.))</i> | fluorine | Фтор |
| <i>Fe</i> | <i>Ferrum, i n</i> | iron | Железо |
| <i>H</i> | <i>Hydrogenium, i n</i> | hydrogen | Водород |
| <i>Hg</i> | <i>Hydrargyrum, i n</i> | mercury | Ртуть |
| <i>I</i> | <i>Iodum, i n</i> | iodine | Йод |
| <i>K</i> | <i>Kalium, i n</i> | potassium | Калий |
| <i>Li</i> | <i>Lithium, i n</i> | lithium | Литий |
| <i>Mg</i> | <i>Magnesium, , i n seu</i> <i>Magnium, i n</i> | magnesium | Магний |
| <i>Mn</i> | <i>Manganum, i , n</i> | manganese | Марганец |
| <i>N</i> | <i>Nitrogenium, i n</i> | nitrogen | Азот |
| <i>Na</i> | <i>Natrium, i n</i> | sodium | Натрий |
| <i>O</i> | <i>Oxygenium, i n</i> | oxygen | Кислород |
| <i>Pb</i> | <i>Plumbum, i n</i> | lead | Свинец |
| <i>Ph</i> | <i>Phosphorus, i m</i> | phosphorus | Фосфор |
| <i>S</i> | <i>Sulfur, uris n</i> | sulphur | Сера |
| <i>Si</i> | <i>Silicium, i n</i> | silicium, silicon | Кремень |
| <i>Zn</i> | <i>Zincum, i n</i> | zinc | Цинк |

NAMES OF ACIDS

Latin trivial acid names consist of the noun *aciĉum, i n* and an adjective of the first group that agrees with it in gender, case and number. Suffix *-iĉ-um* or *-oĉs-um* is added to the stem of acid-forming element.

Model of Formation of the Acid Name

Acidum + adjective with suffix *-iĉ,-oĉs* + ending *-um*

The suffix *-iĉum* indicates a maximum degree of oxidation; it corresponds to the English acid names ending in *-ic*, e.g.: *aciĉum sulfuricum* (*sulphuric acid*).

The suffix *-oĉsum* indicates a low degree of oxidation; it corresponds to acid names in English that end in *-ous*, e.g. *aciĉum sulfurōsum* (*sulphurous acid*).

The adjectives in the names of oxygen-free acids include the prefix *hydro-*, the stem of the acid-building element and the suffix *-iĉum*, e.g.: *aciĉum hydrosulfuricum* (*hydrosulphuric acid*).

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|---|---|
| <i>-iĉum(i n)</i> <i>aciĉum sulfuricum</i> | <i>-ic</i> <i>sulphuric acid</i> | <i>-овая, -евая,-ная</i> <i>серная кислота</i> |
| <i>-oĉsum(i n)</i> <i>aciĉum sulfurōsum</i> | <i>-ous</i> <i>sulphurous acid</i> | <i>-истая</i> <i>сернистая кислота</i> |
| <i>hydro-...-iĉum(i n)</i> <i>aciĉum</i> <i>hydrosulfuricum</i> | <i>hydro-...-ic</i> <i>hydrosulphuric acid</i> | <i>-водородная</i> <i>сероводородная</i> <i>кислота</i> |

OXIDE NAMES

Names of **oxides**, **peroxides** and **hydroxides** consist of two nouns where the first one – the chemical element – is in the Genitive Singular, the second one – the word *oxĉdum, i n* with corresponding prefixes – is in the Nominative Singular:

Zinci oxĉdum (*zinc oxide*);

Hydrogenii peroxĉdum (*hydrogen peroxide*);

Calcii hydroxĉdum (*calcium hydroxide*).

Oxides are translated as *oxĉdum, i n*; *peroxides* – *peroxĉdum, i n*; *hydroxides* – *hydroxĉdum, i n*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

ACIDS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>acidum aceticum</i> | acetic acid | уксусная кислота |
| <i>acidum acetylsalicylicum</i> (<i>Aspirinum</i>) | acetylsalicylic acid | ацетилсалициловая кислота (Аспирин) |
| <i>acidum ascorbinicum</i> | ascorb(in)ic acid | аскорбиновая кислота |
| <i>acidum arsenicosum</i> | arsenous acid | мышьяковистая кислота |
| <i>acidum benzoicum</i> | benzoic acid | бензойная кислота |
| <i>acidum carbolicum</i> | carbolic acid | карболовая кислота |
| <i>acidum carbonicum</i> | carbonic acid | угольная кислота |
| <i>acidum citricum</i> | citric acid | лимонная кислота |
| <i>acidum folicum</i> | folic acid | фолиевая кислота |
| <i>acidum glutaminicum</i> | glutamic acid | глутаминовая кислота |
| <i>acidum hydrochloricum</i> | hydrochloric acid | хлористоводородная (соляная) кислота |
| <i>acidum hydrocyanicum</i> | hydrocyanic acid | цианистая (синильная) кислота |
| <i>acidum hydrosulfuricum</i> | hydrosulphuric acid | сероводородная кислота |
| <i>acidum lacticum</i> | lactic acid | молочная кислота |
| <i>acidum lipoicum</i> | lipoic acid | липоевая кислота |
| <i>acidum nicotinicum</i> | nicotinic acid | никотиновая кислота |
| <i>acidum nitricum</i> | nitric acid | азотная кислота |
| <i>acidum nitrosum</i> | nitrous acid | азотистая кислота |
| <i>acidum phosphoricum</i> | phosphoric acid | фосфорная кислота |
| <i>acidum salicylicum</i> | salicylic acid | салициловая кислота |
| <i>acidum sulfuricum</i> | sulphuric acid | серная кислота |
| <i>acidum sulfurosum</i> | sulphurous acid | сернистая кислота |

MEDICINES

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Amylum (i, n) Tritici</i> | wheat starch | пшеничный крахмал |
| <i>Coffeinum, i n</i> | caffeine | кофеин |
| <i>Hydrocortisonum, i n</i> | hydrocortisone | гидрокортизон |
| <i>oleum Persicorum</i> <i>(olei Persicorum)</i> | peach oil | персиковое масло |
| <i>Oxacillinum, i n</i> | oxacilline | оксациллин |
| <i>Sulfacylum, i n</i> | sulfacyl | сульфацил |
| <i>Talcum, i n</i> | talc, talcum, powder | тальк |
| <i>Vaselineum, i n</i> | vaseline | вазелин |

MISCELLANEOUS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---|----------------|---------------------------|
| <i>albus, a, um</i> | white | белый |
| <i>concentratus, a, um</i> | concentrated | концентрированный |
| <i>depuratus, a, um</i> <i>(in relation to Sulfur)</i> | depurated | очищенный |
| <i>dilutus, a, um</i> | diluted | разведенный, разбавленный |
| <i>flavus, a, um</i> | yellow | желтый |

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin:

Infusion of nettle leaves; ethyl alcohol; cordiamine for injections in unit dose syringes; pepper mint oil; tetracycline ointment; gum-tree oil; lily-of-the-valley herb; powder of rhubarb root; decoction of buckthorn bark; hawthorn tincture.

2. Translate into Latin:

“Bormenthol” ointment; magnesium oxide; vasographine for injections; concentrated hydrogen peroxide solution; solution of lipoic acid in ampoules; alcoholic iodine solution; diluted hydrochloric acid; depurated sulfur; yellow mercury oxide; suppositories with xeroform, coated tablets of glutamic acid.

3. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

- Recipe: Acidi folici 0,0008
Acidi ascorbinici 0,1
Da tales doses numero 30 in tabulettis
Signa:

2. Recīpe: Magnesii peroxydi 0,25
Da tales doses numero 12
Signa:
3. Recīpe: Solutionis Iodi spirituosae 5% – 20 ml
Tannini 3,0
Glycerini 10,0
Misce. Da. Signa:
4. Recīpe: Suppositoria cum Ichthyolo numero 10
Da. Signa:
5. Recīpe: Aetheris pro narcosi 100 ml
Da in vitro nigro
Signa:
6. Recīpe: Tabulettas contra tussim numero 12
pro infantibus
Da. Signa:

4. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Salicylic acid 1.0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch 1.25 both
Vaseline up to 50.0
Mix, so that there is paste.
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Dragee of ascorbic acid 0.05
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid
Phenacetine 0.25 both
Caffeine 0.05
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets.
Indicate:
4. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0.6
Ichthammol 0.8
Zinc ointment 20.0
Mix, so that there is ointment.
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Salicylic acid 5.0
Zinc oxide 25.0
Talcum powder 50.0
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Benzoic acid 0.6
Salicylic acid 0.3
Vaseline 10.0
Mix, so that there is ointment.
Give out. Indicate:

UNIT 5

CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE. SALT NAMES

Names of **salts** (and sometimes of simple ethers) consist of two nouns of which the first is the name of anion in the Nominative Singular, the other one – the name of cation – in the Genitive Singular. Anion names are built with the following suffixes:

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--|-------------------------|----------------------|
| -as (-ātis, m III) <i>nitras</i> (Gen. <i>nitrātis</i>) | -ate nitrate | -ам нитрат |
| -is (ītis, m III) <i>nitris</i> (Gen. <i>nitrītis</i>) | -ite nitrite | -ум нитрит |
| -idum (i, n II) <i>chlorīdum</i> (Gen. <i>chlorīdi</i>) | -ide chloride | -ид хлорид |

NB! Latin names of basic salts are built adding the prefix **sub-** and suffix **-as**: *Bismuthi subnitras* - basic bismuth nitrate.

NB! Names of sodium and potassium salts consist of a substance name and the word **-natrium** or **-kalium** in the Nominative case: *Sulfacylum-natrium*, *Barbitalum-natrium*.

VOCABULARY EXTENSION

MEDICINES

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Aethylmorphinum, i n</i> | ethylmorphine hydrochloride | этилорфин |
| <i>Atropinum, i n</i> | atropine | атропин |
| <i>Barbamylum, i n</i> | barbamyl | барбамил |
| <i>Benzylpenicillinum, i n</i> | benzylpenicillin | бензилпенициллин |
| <i>Camphora, ae f</i> | camphor | камфора |
| <i>Chloroformium, i n</i> | chloroform | хлороформ |
| <i>Codeinum, i n</i> | codeine | кодеин |
| <i>Coffeinum-natrii</i> | sodium-caffeine | кофеин-бензоат |
| <i>benzoas, Coffeini-natrii</i> | benzoate | натрия |
| <i>benzoātis</i> | | |

| | | |
|---|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Ephedrinum, i n</i> | ephedrine | эфедрин |
| <i>Glucosum, i n</i> | glucose | глюкоза |
| <i>Lincomycinum, i n</i> | incomycin | линкомицин |
| <i>Methylī salicylas, Methylī salicylātis</i> | methyl salicylate | метилсалицилат |
| <i>Morphinum, i n</i> | morphine | морфин |
| <i>Oleandomycinum, i n</i> | oleandomycin | олеандомицин |
| <i>oleum Helianthi</i> | sunflower oil | подсолнечное масло |
| <i>oleum Olivarum (Oliva, ae, f)</i> | olive oil | оливковое масло |
| <i>Phenobarbitalum, i n</i> | phenobarbital, luminal | фенобарбитал |
| <i>Phenyliī salicylas, Phenyliī salicylātis</i> | phenyl salicylate | фенилсалицилат |
| <i>Pilocarpinum, i n</i> | pilocarpine | пилокарпин |
| <i>Platyphyllinum, i n</i> | platyphyllin | платифиллин |
| <i>Rutinum, i n</i> | rutin | рутин |
| <i>Streptocidum, i n</i> | streptocide | стрептоцид |
| <i>Strychninum, i n</i> | strychnine | стрихнин |
| <i>Synœstrolum, i n</i> | synestrol | синэстрол |
| <i>Theophyllinum, i n</i> | theophylline | теофиллиnum |
| <i>Thiaminum, i n</i> | thiamine | тиамин |
| <i>Vinylinum, i n</i> | vinylene | винилин |

MISCELLANEOUS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <i>glycerophosphas, ātis m</i> | glycerophosphate | глицерофосфат |
| <i>hydrotartras, ātis m</i> | hydrotartrate | гидротартрат |
| <i>thiosulfas, ātis m</i> | thiosulfate | тиосульфат |
| <i>isotonicus, a, um</i> | isotonic | изотонический |

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin:

Platyphylline hydrotartrate; basic bismuth citrate; potassium iodide; iron lactate; copper citrate; hydrocortisone acetate; adrenaline hydrochloride; strychnine nitrate; calcium glycerophosphate; potassium arsenite;

papaverine hydrochloride; oleandomycine phosphate; calcium chloride; basic magnesium carbonate; potassium acetate; sodium-caffeine benzoate; lithium carbonate; ephedrine hydrochloride; testosterone propionate; lithium benzoate.

2. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

1. Rečipe: Codeini phosphatis 0,015
Acidi acetylsalicylici 0,5
Acidi ascorbinici 0,1
Rutini 0,02
Dimedroli 0,02
Calcii lactatis 0,1
Misce, fiat pulvis
Da tales doses numero 20
Signa:
2. Rečipe: Barbamyli 0,3
Aquae destillatae 25 ml
Misce. Da. Signa:
3. Rečipe: Solutionis Hydrargyri oxycyanidi 0,01% – 50 ml
Da. Signa:

3. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Calcium glycerophosphate
Calcium lactate each 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets.
Indicate:
2. Take: Lyncomicine hydrochloride 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in capsules.
3. Take: Sodium salicylate 1.0
Potassium iodide 0.1
Alcoholic iodine solution 6 drops
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Castor oil 20 ml
Xeroform 1.2
Vinyline 1 ml
Mix, so that there is liniment
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0.03
Sodium bromide 0.15
Sodium-caffeine benzoate 0.05

Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 12.
Indicate:

6. Take: Deadly nightshade extract 0.01
Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate each 0.25
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 10.
Indicate:

UNIT 6

TASKS FOR INDEPENDENT WORK

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Latin:

Coated methionin tablets; solution of sodium arsenite for injections; basic bismuth nitrate with nightshade extract; codeine phosphate in tablets; sodium nitrite solution in ampoules; ointment of copper citrate; ointment of aethacridine lactate; ointment of tetracycline hydrochloride; oily solution of medrotestosteron propionate; granules of glycerophosphate; potassium orotate tablets for children; sodium hydrocitrate for injections; tablets of calcium lactate and calcium glycerophosphate; phenylene tablets.

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Depurated sulfur 0.5
Give out such doses in the amount of 30
Indicate:
2. Take: Resorcine 0.1
95% ethyl alcohol 5 ml
Distilled water 15 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: 1% hydrocortisone ointment 10.0
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Concentrated hydrogen peroxide solution 5.0
Distilled water 15 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid 0.24
Phenacetine 0.18

Caffeine 0.03
Cocoa 0.015
Citric acid 0.02
Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in tablets
Indicate:

3. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Zinc oxide 5.0
Talcum powder 15.0
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Boric acid 1.0
Salicylic acid 5.0
Zinc oxide 25.0
Talcum powder 50.0
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Coated “Microiodine” tablets
with Phenobarbital in the amount of 40
Give out in a dark vial
Indicate:
4. Take: Methylene blue 0.5
25 % glucose solution 50 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 3 in ampoules
Indicate:
NB! Methylene blue – Methylenum coeruleum

4. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

1. Recipe: Tincturae Convallariae
Tincturae Valerianae ana 10 ml
Extracti Crataegi fluidi 5 ml
Mentholi 0,05
Misce. Da. Signa:
2. Recipe: Acidi salicylici 1,0
Zinci oxydi
Amyli Triticum ana 12,5
Vaselini 50,0
Misce, fiat pasta
Da. Signa
3. Recipe: Tabulettas Acidi glutaminici obductas 0,25
numero 100
Da. Signa:

4. Recīpe: Morphini hydrochloridi 0,015
 Apomorphini hydrochloridi 0,05
 Acidi hydrochlorici diluti 1 ml
 Aquae destillatae ad 200 ml
 Misce. Da. Signa:
5. Recīpe: Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” numero 12
 Da. Signa:
6. Recīpe: Solutionis Ichthyoli in Glycerino 40 ml
 Da. Signa:

VOCABULARY EXTENSION MEDICINAL HERBS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|--|--|-------------------|
| <i>Adōnis vernalis, Adonīdis vernalis, f</i> | adonis, pheasant’s eye, spring lychnis; | горицвет весенний |
| <i>Althaea, ae f</i> | alth-root, wymoth, marsh-mallow, althea; | алтей |
| <i>Chamomilla, ae f</i> | chamomile | ромашка |
| <i>Digitālis, is f</i> | foxglove | наперстянка |
| <i>Millefolium, i n</i> | milfoil, yarrow | тысячелистник |

MEDICINES

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Aminazinum, i n</i> | aminazine | аминазин |
| <i>Anaesthesinum, i n</i> | anaesthesine | анестезин |
| <i>Bromisovalum, i n</i> | bromisoval | бромизовал |
| <i>Chinosolum, i n</i> | chinosol | хинозол |
| <i>Corazolum, i n</i> | corazol | коразол |
| <i>Desoxycorticosteronum, i n</i> | desoxycorticosterone | дезоксикортикостерон |
| <i>Erythromycinum, i n</i> | erythromycine | эритромицин |
| <i>Furazolidonum, i n</i> | furazolidone | фуразолидон |
| <i>Methyloestradiolum, i n</i> | methyloestradiol | метилэстрадиол |
| <i>Phthoracizinum, i n</i> | phthoracizine | фторацизин |
| <i>Phenazepamum, i n</i> | phenazepam | феназепам |
| <i>Theobrominum, i n</i> | theobromine | теобромин |

MISCELLANEOUS

| <i>Latin</i> | <i>English</i> | <i>Russian</i> |
|-------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| <i>antiasthmaticus, a, um</i> | antiasthmatic | противоастматический |
| <i>ophthalmicus, a, um</i> | ophthalmic | глазной |
| <i>sirupus, i m</i> | sirup/syrup | сироп |
| <i>solubilis, e</i> | soluble | растворимый |

UNIT 7

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS IN PRESCRIPTION. CHEMICAL COMBINING FORMS

Making out prescriptions doctors use universally accepted abbreviations. We abbreviate names of drug forms, parts of plants and standard prescription formulas. Names of drugs or plants should not be abbreviated!

| <i>Abbreviation</i> | <i>Full term</i> | <i>Translation</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>aa</i> | <i>ana</i> | each |
| <i>ac., acid</i> | <i>acidum</i> | acid |
| <i>ad us. ext.</i> | <i>ad usum externum</i> | for external use |
| <i>ad us. int.</i> | <i>ad usum internum</i> | for internal use |
| <i>aq.</i> | <i>aqua</i> | water |
| <i>aq. dest.</i> | <i>aqua destillata</i> | distilled water |
| <i>comp., cps., cpt.</i> | <i>compositus</i> | composite |
| <i>concentr.</i> | <i>concentratus</i> | concentrated |
| <i>cort.</i> | <i>cortex</i> | bark |
| <i>D.</i> | <i>Da</i> | give out |
| <i>dec., dct.</i> | <i>decoctum</i> | decoction |
| <i>dep.</i> | <i>depuratus, a, um</i> | depurated |
| <i>dil.</i> | <i>dilutus, a, um</i> | diluted |
| <i>D. t. d.</i> | <i>Da tales doses</i> | give out such doses |
| <i>empl.</i> | <i>emplastrum</i> | plaster |
| <i>emuls.</i> | <i>emulsum</i> | emulsion |
| <i>extr.</i> | <i>extractum</i> | extract |
| <i>f.</i> | <i>fiat, fiant</i> | so that there is (are) |

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>fl.</i> | <i>flos</i> | flower |
| <i>fluid.</i> | <i>fluidus, a, um</i> | fluid |
| <i>fol.</i> | <i>folium</i> | leaf |
| <i>fr.</i> | <i>fructus</i> | fruit |
| <i>gel.</i> | <i>gelatinosus, a, um</i> | gelatinous |
| <i>gran.</i> | <i>granulum</i> | granule |
| <i>gtt., gttts.</i> | <i>guttam, guttas</i> | drop, drops |
| <i>h., hb.</i> | <i>herba</i> | herb |
| <i>in ampull.</i> | <i>in ampullis</i> | in ampoules |
| <i>in caps.</i> | <i>in capsulis</i> | in capsules |
| <i>inf.</i> | <i>infusum</i> | infusion |
| <i>in obl.</i> | <i>in oblatis</i> | in cachets |
| <i>in tab.</i> | <i>in tabulettis</i> | in tablets |
| <i>in vitr. nigr.</i> | <i>in vitro nigro</i> | in a dark vial |
| <i>linim.</i> | <i>linimentum</i> | liniment |
| <i>M.</i> | <i>Misce</i> | mix |
| <i>mucil.</i> | <i>mucilāgo</i> | mucilage |
| <i>n.</i> | <i>numero</i> | in the amount of |
| <i>obd.</i> | <i>obductus, a, um</i> | coated |
| <i>past.</i> | <i>pasta</i> | paste |
| <i>praec., pct., ppt.</i> | <i>praecipitātus, a, um</i> | precipitated |
| <i>pro inject.</i> | <i>pro injectionibus</i> | for injections |
| <i>pulv.</i> | <i>pulvis</i> | powder |
| <i>q. s.</i> | <i>quantum satis</i> | as much as necessary |
| <i>r., rad.</i> | <i>radix</i> | root |
| <i>Rp.:</i> | <i>Recīpe:</i> | take |
| <i>rectif.</i> | <i>rectīficatus, a, um</i> | purified |
| <i>rhiz.</i> | <i>rhizōma</i> | rhizome |
| <i>S.</i> | <i>Signa</i> | indicate |
| <i>sem.</i> | <i>semen</i> | seed |
| <i>simpl.</i> | <i>simplex</i> | simple |
| <i>sir.</i> | <i>sirūpus</i> | sirup |
| <i>sol.</i> | <i>solutio</i> | solution |
| <i>sp.</i> | <i>species</i> | tea |
| <i>spir.</i> | <i>spiritus</i> | alcohol |

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Steril.</i> | <i>Sterilisa!</i> | sterilize |
| <i>supp.</i> | <i>suppositorium (rectale)</i> | (rectal) suppository |
| <i>supp. vagin.</i> | <i>suppositorium vaginale</i> | vaginal suppository |
| <i>susp.</i> | <i>suspensio</i> | suspension |
| <i>tab.</i> | <i>tabuletta</i> | tablet |
| <i>t-ra, tinct.</i> | <i>tinctura</i> | tincture |
| <i>ung.</i> | <i>unguentum</i> | ointment |

NB! Thi- (Greek *theion* – sulfur) shows the presence of a substituting sulfur atom: *Thiaminum, Thiopentalum, Thiophosphamidum*;

-az-, -zol-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zid- (from *azot* in Greek: *a* - negation, *zoon* - life) shows the presence of nitrogen or nitrogen group: *Corazolium, Aminazinum, Saluzidum*.

In some drug names the syllables that sound like **-zin-, -zol-** are of a different origin and so are spelt with **s**, e.g.: *Anaesthesinum, Chinosolum, Aerosolum, Anusolum*.

NB! Phthor- (Greek *phthoros* – destruction) shows the presence of fluorine compounds: *Phthoracizinum, Phthorothanum*.

EXERCISES

1. Translate the names of raw materials:

Spring lychnis herb; rhizome and roots of valerian; foxglove leaf; lily-of-the-valley herb; hawthorn fruits; buckthorn bark; St. John's wort herb; pepper mint leaf; oak bark (*Quercus*, us, f); sunflower seeds; peach oil; milfoil herb; sage leaf; linseed (*Linum*, i, n); linseed oil; stinging nettle leaves; eucalyptus leaf; marsh-mallow root.

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

- Take: Tablets of lipoic acid 0.25 in the amount of 50
Give out. Indicate:
- Take: Coated tablets of oleandomycine phosphate 0.125
in the amount of 25
Give out. Indicate:
- Take: Zinc sulphate
Lead acetate 0.3 each
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
- Take: Great nightshades extract 0.02
Xeroform 0.1

Zinc sulfate 0.05
Glycerin 0.12
Mix, so that there is a suppository
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:

5. Take: Silver nitrate 0.25
Vinyline 1.0
Vaseline 30.0
Mix so that there is ointment
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Methylenechloride tablets 0.0002 in the amount of 10
Give out. Indicate:

3. Translate the following prescriptions with Accusativus:

1. Take: Sulfadimine tablets 0.5 in the amount of 12
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: "Revit" dragee in the amount of 50
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: "Anusol" suppositories in the amount of 6
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: "Kameton" aerosol 30.0
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Furazolidone tablets 0.1 in the amount of 20
Give out. Indicate:

4. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Nightshade extract 0.02
Xeroform 0.1
Zinc sulfate 0.05
Glycerin 0.12
Mix, so that there is a suppository
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
2. Take: Spring lychnis herb 8.0
Peppermint leaves 1.0
Mix, so that there is tea
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Rhubarb syrup 300 ml
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Infusion of valerian bark from 20.0–200 ml
Infusion of motherwort herb from 20.0–200 ml

- Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Suppository with methyluracil 0.5
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:

NB! ‘from’ – ‘ex’, followed by a noun in the Ablative case.

UNIT 8

REVISION

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Menthol 0.1
Phenyl salicylate 0.3
Vaseline oil up to 10ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Mercury oxycyanide solution 50 ml
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Chloroform Sunflower oil
Methyl salicylate 15 ml each
Mix, so that there is liniment
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Sodium thiosulfate 10.0
Isotonic sodium chloride solution up to 100 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Streptocide
Norsulfazol 1.5 each
Benzylpenicilline-sodium 25000 UA
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0.05
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: 3% thiamine bromide solution 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:
7. Take: Suppository with methyluracil 0.5
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
8. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0.015

Apomorphine hydrochloride 0.05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

9. Take: Mercury oxycyanide solution 50 ml
Give out. Indicate:
10. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil
Methyl salicylate 15 ml each
Mix, so that there is liniment
Give out. Indicate:

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Codeine phosphate 0.015
Acetylsalicylic acid 0.5
Ascorbic acid 0,1
Rutine 0.02
Benadryl 0.02
Calcium lactate 0.1
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20
Indicate:
2. Take: Menthol 0.1
Phenyl salicylate 0.3
Vaseline oil up to 10 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: 3% thiamine bromide solution 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:
4. Take: Streptocide
Norsulfazol 1.5 each
Benzylpenicilline-sodium 25000 UA
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0.05
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Sodium thiosulfate 10.0
Isotonic sodium chloride solution up to 100 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0.015
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0.05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml

- Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
7. Take: Codeine phosphate 0.015
Acetylsalicylic acid 0.5
Ascorbic acid 0.1
Rutine 0.02
Benadryl 0.02
Calcium lactate 0.1
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20
Indicate:
8. Take: Buckthorn bark 30 g
Nettle leaves 20 g
Milfoil herb 10 g
Mix, so that there is tea
Give out. Indicate:
9. Take: Aminazine solution 2.5% 2 ml
Glucose solution 5% 20 ml
Mix. Sterilise!
Give out. Indicate:

3. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Ichthammol 1.25
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch 12.5 each
Vaseline up to 50.0
Mix, so that there is paste
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Menthol 2.5 g
Novocain
Anesthesine 1 g each
Ethyl alcohol 70% up to 100 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Oily synestrol solution 0.1% 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in ampoules
Indicate:
4. Take: Fluid aloes extract 1ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:
5. Take: Infusion of wymoth root 100 ml
Wymoth sirup 20 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

6. Take: Antiasthmatic tea 50 g
Give out. Indicate
7. Take: Tincture of rhubarb root and rhizome 200 ml
Give out. Indicate:
8. Take: Chamomile flowers infusion 200 ml
Give out. Indicate:
9. Take: Chloroform
Ethyl alcohol 95% 20 ml each
Ethyl ether 10ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

4. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Theobromine
Amidopyrine 0.25 each
Phenobarbital 0.02
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets
Indicate:
2. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0.003
Papaverine hydrochloride 0.03
Theobromine 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in tablets
Indicate:
3. Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0.5 in the amount of 10
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Alcoholic solution of hydrogen peroxide 50 ml
Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: 10% solution of norsulfazol-sodium
Isotonic sodium chloride solution 10 ml each
Mix. Give out. Indicate:

5. Translate the following prescriptions into English:

1. Recīpe: Specierum pectoralium 50,0
Da. Signa:
2. Recīpe: Infusi radice Althaeae 3,0 – 100 ml
Sirupi Althaeae 20 ml
Misce. Da. Signa:
3. Recīpe: Specierum antiasthmaticarum 50, 0
Da. Signa:
4. Recīpe: Succi Aloēs 100 ml
Da in vitro nigro
Signa:

5. Rečipe: Herbae Adonidis vernalis 2,0
 Rhizomatis cum radicibus Valerianae 1,5
 Misce, fiat species
 Da tales doses numero 6
 Signa:

UNIT 9

THE FINAL TESTS ON PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

Do one of the Final Tests on Pharmaceutical Terminology in written form:

Variant 1

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Hydrogen hydroxide
 Benzoic acid
 Magnesium sulphate
 Suppository with glycerin
 Wheat starch

2. Translate the following prescriptions:

- | | | |
|----------|--|--------------|
| 1. Take: | Valerian extract | 0,5 |
| | Hawthorn tincture | 0,15 |
| | Rhubarb tincture | 0,8 |
| | Barbital-sodium | 0,2 |
| | Ethyl alcohol | 20 ml |
| | Distilled water | up to 200 ml |
| | Mix. Give out. Indicate: | |
| 2. Take: | Tablets of sulfadimidine 0,5 in the amount of 20 | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 3. Take: | Yellow mercury oxide | 0,6 |
| | Ichthammol | 0,8 |
| | Zinc ointment | 20,0 |
| | Mix, so that there is ointment | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 4. Take: | Acetylsalicylic acid | |
| | Phenacetine | both 0,25 |

- | | | |
|----------|--|-------|
| | Caffeine | 0,05 |
| | Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets | |
| | Indicate: | |
| 5. Take: | Platyphylline hydrotartrate | 0,003 |
| | Sodium bromide | 0,15 |
| | Sodium-caffeine benzoate | 0,05 |
| | Mix, so that there is powder | |
| | Give out. | |
| | Indicate: | |
| 6. Take: | Antiasthmatic tea | 50,0 |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |

Variant 2

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Aluminium hydroxide
 Carbonic acid
 Sodium nitrite
 Depurated sulphur
 Dibazol in ampules

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

- | | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 1. Take: | Lily-of-the-valley tincture | |
| | Valerian tincture | both 10 ml |
| | Nitroglycerine solution 1% | 1 ml |
| | Validol | 2 ml |
| | Mix. Give out. Indicate: | |
| 2. Take: | Tablet of furaciline | 0,02 |
| | Give out such doses in the amount of 10 | |
| | Indicate: | |
| 3. Take: | Salicylic acid | 1,0 |
| | Zinc oxide | |
| | Wheat starch | both 12,5 |
| | Vaseline | up to 50,0 |
| | Mix, so that there is paste | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 4. Take: | Morphine hydrochloride | 0,015 |
| | Apomorphine hydrochloride | 0,05 |
| | Diluted hydrochloric acid | 1 ml |

- | | | |
|----------|--|--------------|
| | Distilled water | up to 200 ml |
| | Mix. Give out. Indicate: | |
| 5. Take: | Phenoxymethylpenicillin | 1 000 000 AU |
| | Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in tablets | |
| | Indicate: | |
| 6. Take: | Chloroform | |
| | Ethyl alcohol 95% | both 20 ml |
| | Ethyl ether | drops 5 |
| | Mix. Give out. Indicate: | |

Variant 3

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Iron oxide
 Sulphurous acid
 Copper citrate
 Alcoholic solution of iodine
 Ether for anaesthesia

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

- | | | |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 1. Take: | Aminophylline | 0,1 |
| | Benadryl | 0,0125 |
| | Sugar | 0,2 |
| | Mix, so that there is powder | |
| | Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in capsules | |
| | Indicate: | |
| 2. Take: | Salicylic acid | 5,0 |
| | Zinc oxide | 25,0 |
| | Talc | 50,0 |
| | Mix, so that there is powder | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 3. Take: | Streptocide | |
| | Norsulfazol | both 1,5 |
| | Benzylpenicillin-sodium | 25 000 AU |
| | Ephedrine hydrochloride | 0,05 |
| | Mix, so that there is powder | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 4. Take: | Suppositories "Anusol" in the amount of 6 | |
| | Give out. Indicate: | |
| 5. Take: | Buckthorn bark | 30,0 |
| | Stinging nettle leaves | 20,0 |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| Milfoil herb | 10,0 |
| Mix, so that there is tea | |
| Give out. Indicate: | |
| 6. Take: Solution of aminazine 2,5% | 2 ml |
| Solution of glucose 5% | 20ml |
| Mix. Sterilize! Give out. Indicate: | |

Variant 4

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Hydrogen hydroxide
 Hydrosulphuric acid
 Fluid nettle extract
 Yellow mercury oxide
 Solution for injections

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Oily synestrol solution 0,1 % 1 ml
 Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in ampoules
2. Take: Infusion of althaea root 100 ml
 Althaea sirup 20 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Belladonna extract 0,01
 Basic bismuth nitrate
 Phenyl salicylate both 0,25
 Mix, so that there is powder
 Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets
 Indicate:
4. Take: Calcium glycerophosphate
 Calcium lactate both 0,25
 Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets
 Indicate:
5. Take: Sodium salicylate 1,0
 Potassium iodide 0,1
 Alcoholic iodine solution drops 6
 Distilled water up to 200 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Coated tablets of oleandomycine phosphate 0,125
 in the amount of 25
 Give out. Indicate:

Variant 5

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Wheat starch
Magnesium sulphate
Benzoic acid
Suppository with glycerin
Potassium iodide

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Lily-of-the-valley tincture
Valerian tincture both 10 ml
Nitroglycerine solution 1% 1 ml
Validol 2 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Tablet of furaciline 0,02
Give out such doses in the amount of 10
Indicate:
3. Take: Streptocide
Norsulfazol both 1,5
Benzylpenicillin-sodium 25 000 AU
Ephedrine hydrochloride 0,05
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Acetylsalicylic acid
Phenacetine both 0,25
Caffeine 0,05
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets
Indicate:
5. Take: Platyphylline hydrotartrate 0,003
Sodium bromide 0,15
Sodium-caffeine benzoate 0,05
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Aminazine solution 2,5% 2 ml
Glucose solution 5% 20 ml
Mix. Sterilize! Give out. Indicate:

Variant 6

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Dibazol in ampoules

Iron oxide
Copper citrate
Alcoholic solution of iodine
Carbonic acid

2. Translate the following prescriptions:

1. Take: Valerian extract 0,5
 Hawthorn tincture 0,15
 Rhubarb tincture 0,8
 Barbital-sodium 0,2
 Ethyl alcohol 20 ml
 Distilled water up to 200 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Tablets of sulfadimidine 0,5 in the amount of 20
 Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Belladonna extract 0,01
 Basic bismuth nitrate
 Phenyl salicylate both 0,25
 Mix, so that there is powder
 Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets
 Indicate:
4. Take: Suppositories “Anusol” in the amount of 6
 Give out. Indicate:
 Indicate:
5. Take: Sodium salicylate 1,0
 Potassium iodide 0,1
 Alcoholic iodine solution drops 6
 Distilled water up to 200 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Chloroform
 Ethyl alcohol 95% both 20 ml
 Ethylic ether drops 5
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:

Variant 7

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Ether for anesthesia
Aluminum hydroxide
Sodium nitrite

Sulphurous acid
Purified sulphur

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Euphylline 0,1
Dimedrol 0,0125
Sugar 0,2
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in capsules
Indicate:
2. Take: Salicylic acid 5,0
Zinc oxide 25,0
Talc 50,0
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0,6
Ichthammol 0,8
Zinc ointment 20,0
Mix, so that there is ointment
Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,015
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1ml
Distilled water up to 200 ml
Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Oily synestrol solution 0,1% 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 6 in ampoules
6. Take: Coated tablets of oleandomycine phosphate 0,125
in the amount of 25
Give out. Indicate:

Variant 8

1. Translate the following into Latin:

Magnesium sulphate
Hydrogen hydroxide
Suppository with glycerin
Wheat starch
Benzoic acid

2. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0,6
 Ichthammol 0,8
 Zinc ointment 20,0
 Mix, so that there is ointment
 Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Lily of the valley tincture
 Valerian tincture both 10 ml
 Nitroglycerine solution 1% 1 ml
 Validol 2 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
3. Take: Salicylic acid 5,0
 Zinc oxide 25,0
 Talc 50,0
 Mix, so that there is powder
 Give out. Indicate:
4. Take: Valerian extract 0,5
 Hawthorn tincture 0,15
 Rhubarb tincture 0,8
 Barbital-sodium 0,2
 Ethyl alcohol 20 ml
 Distilled water up to 200 ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:
5. Take: Antiasthmatic herbal mix (tea) 50,0
 Give out. Indicate:
6. Take: Tablet of furaciline 0,02
 Give out such doses in the amount of 10
 Indicate:

UNIT 10

THE FINAL TESTS ON LATIN AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Do one of the Final Tests on Latin and Medical Terminology in written form:

Test №1

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

passage of the nose

upper lobe of the left lung

basis of the pyramid
the right lung
crest of the greater tubercle

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

sinking down of the stomach
increase in the number of the red blood cells
pus in the blood
inflammation of the brain
excision of the gallbladder

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

gastroenteroscopia
cholaemia
chondroma
pyodermia
splenoptosis

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Benzoic acid 0.6
 Salicylic acid 0.3
 Vaseline 10.0
 Mix, so that there is ointment
 Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Suppositories “Anusol” in the amount of 6
 Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Milfoil herb
Diluted hydrochloric acid

Test № 2

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

tuber of the upper jaw

occipital region
process of the nasal concha
muscles of the head
posterior tubercle of the cervical vertebra

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

water in the blood
a disease of the gallbladder
softening of the brain
dental tumour
a science about skin diseases

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

bradycardia
dyskinesia
lipuria
erythrocytosis
polyphagia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Codeine phosphate 0.015
 Salicylic acid 0.5
 Ascorbinic acid 0.1
 Rutine 0.02
 Calcium lactate 0.1
 Mix, so that there is powder
 Give out such doses in the amount of 20
 Indicate:
2. Take: Chloroform
 Ethyl alcohol 95% both 20 ml
 Ethylic ether 10ml
 Mix. Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Rhubarb tincture
Hydrogen peroxide

Test № 3

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

lobes of the liver
lateral lamina of the pterygoid processes
incisure of the lower jaw
zygomatic bone
articular cavity

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

tumour of the cartilage tissue
non-inflammatory disease of the kidney
slow/ reduced heart beat rate
inflammation of the liver
instrumental examination of the ear

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

ophthalmotonometria
phlebectasia
hysteroptosis
hyperglykaemia
dyskinesia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Solution of thiamine bromide 3% 1 ml
Give out such doses in the amount of 10 in ampoules
Indicate:
2. Take: Salicylic acid 1.0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch both 12.5
Vaseline up to 50.0
Mix, so that there is paste
Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Tablets of phenoxymethylpenicillin
Depurated sulfur

Test № 4

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

smaller horn
ethmoid sulcus of the nasal cavity
cardiac impression
bones of the skull
vessels of the nerves

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms with the following meanings:

pressure measuring
disposition for hemorrhages
weakness of the nerves
instrumental examination of the oral cavity
sinking down of the kidney

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

autohaemotherapy
thoracotomia
cephalalgia
gynaecophobia
perimetritis

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Codeine phosphate 0.015
Salicylic acid 0.5
Ascorbinic acid 0.1
Rutine 0.02
Calcium lactate 0.1
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20
Indicate:
2. Take: Monomycine 0.25
Give out such doses in the amount of 50 in tablets
Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Distilled water

Gum-tree oil

Test № 5

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

basis of the skull

frontal tuber

incisure of the right lung

middle ribs

holes of the pulmonary veins

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

kidney hemorrhage

absence of urination

fixation of the spleen

bone softening

instrumental examination of the eye

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

pneumothorax

polyneuritis

termotherapia

logopaedia

spondylodynia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Amidopyrine

Phenacetine

both 0.25

Give out such doses in the amount of 12 in tablets

Indicate:

2. Take: Zinc sulphate

Lead acetate

both 0.3

Distilled water

up to 200 ml

Mix. Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Ethylic ether

Fluid hawthorn extract

Test № 6

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

neck of the shoulderblade

thyroid gland

branch of the lower hollow vein

anterior surfaces

tubercle of the cervical vertebrae

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms with the following meanings:

softening of the bone marrow

pain in the ear

treatment with the help of one's own blood

inflammation of the mouth

narrowing of the vessels

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

adenotomia

bradycardia

hypotonia

splanchnologia

anophthalmia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Barbitol-sodium 0.5

Cocoa oil as much as necessary,

so that there is a suppository

Give out such doses in the amount of 12

Indicate:

2. Take: Calcium glycerophosphate

Calcium lactate

both 0.25

Give out such doses in the amount of 20 in tablets
Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Gum-tree oil

Valerian tincture

Test 7

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

oral cavity

upper transverse ligament

zygomatic process of the frontal bone

areas of the body

nerves of the vessels

Clinical Terminology

II. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

decreased erythrocytes

increased heart rate

inflammation of the small intestine

increased blood pressure

disease of the brain

I

I. Explain the following Latin terms:

ophthalmopyorrhoea

splanchnoptosis

leucodermia

gerontologia

cystotomia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Streptocide

Norsulfazol

both 1.5

Benzylpenicillin-sodium

25 000 AU

Ephedrine hydrochloride

0.05

- Mix, so that there is powder
Give out. Indicate:
2. Take: Tablets of Sulfadimine 0.5 in the amount of 12
Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Sirup of alth-root
Diluted hydrochloric acid

Test № 8

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

angle of the mouth
transverse ligament
horizontal plate of the frontal bone
vertebral articulations
sinus of the hollow veins

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings

removal of the uterus
operation for eliminating adhesions from the nerve
decreased heart rate
X-ray examination of the brain
examination of the nose

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

hepatocholecystitis
phlebectasia
pyodermia
cardiologia
craniometria

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

| | |
|-------------------------|------|
| 1. Take: Buckthorn bark | 30.0 |
| Stinging nettle leaves | 20.0 |
| Milfoil herb | 10.0 |

- Mix, so that there is tea
Give out. Indicate:
- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| 2. Take: Morphine hydrochloride | 0.015 |
| Apomorphine hydrochloride | 0.05 |
| Diluted hydrochloric acid | up to 1 ml |
| Distilled water | up to 200 ml |
- Mix. Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Penicillin for injections
Sodium nitrate

Test № 9

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

zygomatic bone
upper lobe of the left lung
passage of the nose
frontal tubers
heads of the gluteal muscles

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

hemorrhage from the uterus
tumour of the gland
sinking down of the stomach
inflammation of the inner coating of the heart
pus in the blood

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

anuria
leucodermia
splenopexia
angiosclerosis
rhinoplastica

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

| | |
|----------------------------|-----|
| 1. Take: Sodium salicylate | 1.0 |
| Potassium iodide | 1.0 |

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| Salicylic acid | 0.3 |
| Vaseline | 10.0 |
| Mix, so that there is ointment | |
| Give out. Indicate: | |
| 1. Take: Chloroform | |
| Ethyl alcohol 95% | both 20 ml |
| Ethylic ether | 10ml |
| Mix. Give out. Indicate: | |

III. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Milfoil herb

Norsulfazol in tablets

Test № 11

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

incisure of the lower jaw

zygomatic bone

articular cavity

lobes of the liver

frontal tubers

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

dry skin

a disease of the gallbladder

softening of the brain

dental tumour

treating with water

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

autohaemotherapy

thoracotomy

cephalalgia

gynaecophobia

perimetritis

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

| | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. Take: Codeine phosphate | 0.015 |
| Salicylic acid | 0.5 |

Ascorbinic acid 0.1
Rutine 0.02
Calcium lactate 0.1
Mix, so that there is powder
Give out such doses in the amount of 20

Indicate:

2. Take: Castor oil 20 ml
Xeroform 1.2
Vinylin 1 ml

Mix, so that there is liniment

Give out. Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Rhubarb tincture

Hydrogen peroxide

Test № 12

Anatomical Terminology

I. Translate into Latin:

angle of the mouth

transverse ligament

horizontal plate of the frontal bone

vertebral articulations

sinus of the hollow veins

Clinical Terminology

I. Make up Latin terms having the following meanings:

hemorrhage from the uterus

tumour of the gland

sinking down of the stomach

examination of the urinary bladder

air in the thorax

II. Explain the following Latin terms:

laparotomia

polyneuritis

colostomia

termoherapia

logopaedia

Pharmaceutical Terminology

I. Translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Streptocide

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| Norsulfazol | both 1.5 |
| Benzylpenicillin-sodium | 25 000 AU |
| Ephedrine hydrochloride | 0.05 |

Mix, so that there is powder

Give out. Indicate:

2. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0.015

Apomorphine hydrochloride 0.05

Diluted hydrochloric acid up to 1 ml

Distilled water up to 200 ml

Mix. Give out. Indicate:

Indicate:

II. Translate the following word-combinations into Latin:

Iodine solution

Lily-of-the-valley tincture

Dear Friend!

You have just finished studying the professionally oriented course of Latin language and the basics of the medical terminology.

We are glad that you have come into contact with the international language of professional communication in the field of medicine.

We hope mastering this course in the first year of training helps to educate a doctor well versed in professional terminology.

ENGLISH-LATIN-RUSSIAN GLOSSARY

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| A | | |
| abdominal | abdominlis, e | брюшной |
| abducting (VI cranial) nerve | abducens, entis | отводящий (нерв) |
| abductor (muscle) | abductor, ōris m | отводящая (мышца) |
| accessory | accessorius, a, um | добавочный |
| accompanying | comitans, antis | сопутствующий, сопровождающий |
| acetylsalicylic | acetylsalicylicus, a, um | ацетилсалициловый |
| acid | acīdum, i n | кислота |
| acoustic | acusticus, a, um | акустический, слуховой |
| acquired | acquisitus, a, um | приобретенный |
| acromial | acromialis, e | акромиальный |
| acromion | acromiōn, i n | акромион |
| acute | acutus, a, um | острый |
| act | actus, us m | акт, действие |
| activated | activātus, a, um | активированный |
| adductor (muscle) | adductor, ōris m | приводящая (мышца) |
| adipose, fatty | adipōsus, a, um | жирный, жировой |
| adoniside | Adonisīdum, i n | адонизид |
| adult | adultus, a, um | взрослый, совершеннолетний |
| aeron | Aērōnum, i n | аэрон |
| aevit | Aēvītum, i n | аэвит |
| afferent | afferens, entis | афферентный (центростремительный), приносящий |
| against | contra (с Acc.) | против, вопреки |
| age | aēr, aēris m | возраст |
| air | aēr, aēris m | воздух |
| alar | alaris, e | крыльный |

| | | |
|---------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| albumin | albumen, ĩnis n | белок |
| alcohol | alcōhol, ōlis n, spirĭtus, us m | алкоголь, спирт |
| alcoholic | alcoholicus, a, um | алкогольный |
| alimentary | alimentarius, a, um | алиментарный, пи- щевой |
| alive | vivus, a, um | живой |
| allergic | allergicus, a, um | аллергический |
| aloe | Aloë, es f | алоэ, сабур |
| alternate | alternans, antis | чередующийся |
| alum (sg) | alūmen, ĩnis n | квасцы (алюминиево- калиевые) |
| alveolar | alveolaris, e | альвеолярный |
| amidochloride | Amidochlorĭdum, i n | амидохлорид |
| amidopyrine | Amidopyrĭnum, i n | амидопирин |
| aminazine | Aminazĭnum, i n | аминазин |
| ammoniac | ammoniātus, a, um | аммиачный |
| amnion | amnion, i n | амнион |
| amorphous | amorphus, a, um | аморфный |
| ampicillin | Ampicillĭnum, i n | ампициллин |
| ampoule | ampulla, ae f | ампула |
| amputation | amputatio, ōnis f | ампутация |
| anal | analĭs, e | анальный |
| analysis | analĭsis, is f | анализ |
| anatomical | anatomicus, a, um | анатомический |
| and | et | и |
| anesthesia | narcōsis, is f | наркоз |
| anesthesin | Anaesthesĭnum, i n | анестезин |
| aneurysm | aneurysma, ātis n | аневризма |
| angioneurotic | angioneuroticus, a, um | ангионевротический |
| angle | angulus, i m | angulus, i m |
| animal | anĭmal, ālis n | животное |
| animal | animalis, e | животный |
| anise | Anĭsum, i n | анис |

| | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ankle bone | talus, i m | таранная кость |
| ankylosis | ankylosis, is f | анкилоз |
| another | alter, ěra, ěrum | другой |
| anterior, front | anterior, ius | передний |
| anthrax | anthrax, ācis m | сибирская язва |
| antiasthmatic | antiastrimaticus, a, um | противо- астматический |
| antibiotic | antibioticum, i n | антибиотик |
| antidote | antidōtum, i n | антидот, противоядие |
| antiseptic | antisepticus, a, um | антисептический |
| antrum | antrum, i n | пещера, полость |
| anus | anus, i m | анус, задний проход |
| aorta | aorta, ae f | аорта |
| aortic | aorticus, a, um | аортальный |
| aperture | apertūra, ae f | апертура, отверстие |
| apomorphine | Apomorphinum, i n | апоморфин |
| aponeurosis | aponeurōsis, is f | апоневроз |
| appearance | habitus, us m | внешность, наружность |
| appendix | appendix, ĩcis f | аппендикс, придаток |
| aqueduct | aqu(a)eductus, us m | водопровод |
| arachnoid membrane | arachnoidea, ae f | паутинная мозговая оболочка |
| arch | arcus, us m | дуга |
| arched | arcuātus, a, um | дугοобразный |
| area | area, ae f | поле (кружок) |
| arrhythmia | ar(r)hythmia, ae f | аритмия |
| arsenic | arsenis, ĩtis m | арсенит |
| arterial | arteriōsus, a, um arterialis, e | артериальный |
| artery | arteria, ae f | артерия |
| articular | articularis, e | суставной |
| arytenoids | arytenoideus, a, um | черпаловидный |
| as much as is desired | quantum libet, q.l. | сколько угодно (в рецептах) |

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| as much as suffices, as much as needed | quantum satis, q.s., quantum sufficit, q.suff. | (сколько нужно, сколько потребуется, сколько нужно (в рецептах) |
| as much as you like | quantum vis, q.v. | сколько угодно (в рецептах) |
| ascending | ascendens, entis | восходящий |
| asthma (difficulty in breathing) | asthma, ātis n | астма (удушие) |
| asthmatic | asthmaticus, a, um | астматический |
| at pleasure | ad lib. = ad libitum | (по желанию, сколько угодно, в любом количестве |
| atherosclerotic | atheroscleroticus, a, um | атеросклеротический |
| atlas, atlantes (pl) | atlas, āntis m | атлант, шейный позвонок |
| atrium (of the heart) | atrium cordis | предсердие |
| atropine | Atropīnum, i n | атропин |
| auditory, auditive | auditīvus, a, um | слуховой |
| auricle (of the ear) | auricula, ae f | ушная раковина, ушко |
| auricular (relating to the ear or to the auricle of the heart) | auricularis, e | ушной, ушковый |
| auscultation | auscultatio, ōnis f | аускультация, выслушивание |
| author | auctor, ōris m | автор |
| axillary | axillaris, e | подмышечный |
| axis | axis, is m | ось, II шейный позвонок |
| В | | |
| back | dorsum, i n | спина, тыл |
| bad | malus, a, um | плохой, худой |
| band | taenia, ae f, vinculum, i n | лента, связка |

| | | |
|---------------------|---|--|
| barbital, barbitone | Barbitālum, i n | барбитал |
| base | basis, is f | основание, базис (основное средство в сложном рецепте) |
| basic carbonate | subcarbōnas, ātis m | основной карбонат |
| basic nitrate | subnitrās, ātis m | основной нитрат |
| basilar | basilaris, e | базиллярный |
| bed-sore | decubītus, us m | пролежень |
| before | ante (c Acc.) | до, раньше |
| before death | ante mortem | перед смертью |
| before meals | ante cenam, ante cibos, ante cibum (a.c.) | перед едой |
| behind | post (c Acc.) | 1. позади, за 2. после, спустя |
| belly | venter, tris m; abdōmen, ĩnis n | брюшко (мышцы), брюхо; живот, брюхо |
| benign | benignus, a, um | доброкачественный |
| benzoate | benzoas, ātis m | бензоат |
| benzoate sodium | Coffeīnum (i)-natrii benzoas, ātis m | кофеин-бензоат натрия |
| benzoic | benzoicus, a, um | бензойный |
| benzylpenicillin | Benzylpenicillīnum, i n | Benzylpenicillīnum, i n |
| berry | bacca, ae f | ягода |
| best | optīmus, a, um | наилучший |
| biceps (muscle) | biceps, cipītis | двуглавая мышца |
| bicuspid | bicuspidalis, e; praemolaris, e | двустворчатый; малый коренной зуб, премоляр |
| bifurcation | bifurcatio, ōnis f | бифуркация, раздвоение |
| big toe | hallux, ūcis m | большой палец стопы |
| bile | chole, es f; fel, fellis n | желчь |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| biliary | biliaris, e; felleus, a, um | билиарный; желчный |
| biliferous | bilifer, ěra, ěrum | желчный, желчеотво- дящий |
| bilious | biliōsus, a, um; choledōchus, a, um | желчный, желтушный; желчный |
| bitter | amārus, a, um | горький |
| bivalent | bivalens, entis | двухвалентный |
| biventral | digastricus, a, um | двубрюшный |
| black | niger, gra, grum | чёрный, тёмный |
| bladder | vesīca, ae f | пузырь |
| blind | c(a)ecus, a, um | слепой |
| blind gut | caecum, i n | слепая кишка |
| blood | sanguis, ĩnis m | кровь |
| bloody | sanguineus, a, um | кровеносный, кровавый |
| body | corpus, ōris n | тело; организм |
| body-fluid | humor, ōris m | влага |
| boil | abscessus, us m | абсцесс, нарыв, гнойник |
| bone | os, ossis n | кость |
| bone marrow | medulla ossium | костный мозг |
| bony | osseus, a, um | костный |
| border | margo, ĩnis m | край, граница |
| boric | boricus, a, um | борный |
| born | natus, a, um | рожденный |
| bottom | fundus, i m | дно |
| bowel (intestinal) obstruction | ileus, i m | непроходимость кишечника |
| box | scatŭla, ae f | коробка, коробочка |
| brain | encephālon, i n | головной мозг |
| branch | ramus, i m | ветвь |
| breast | mamma, ae f | молочная железа, грудь |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------|---|
| breast-bone | sternum, i n | грудина |
| bridge | pons, pontis m | мост; образование, подобное мосту |
| briefly | breviter | кратко |
| brilliant | nitens, entis | блестящий |
| broken dose, divided dose, fractional dose | dosis refracta | дробная доза, уменьшенная, назначается многократно через краткие промежутки времени |
| bromide | bromīdum, i n | бромид |
| bronchial | bronchialis, e | bronchialis, e |
| bronchus | bronchus, i m | бронх |
| buccal | buccalis, e | щёчный |
| buckthorn | Frangūla, ae f | крушина |
| bulb, bulbous | bulbus, i m | луковица (клубневидное утолщение) |
| bulging | eminens, entis | выдающийся, выступающий |
| by mouth, through the mouth, per os | peroralis, e; per os | пероральный, через рот |
| С | | |
| c(a)esarean section | sectio caesarea | кесарево сечение |
| cachet | oblata, ae f | капсула, облатка |
| caffeine | Coffeīnum, i n | кофеин |
| calcaneal | calcaneus, a, um | пяточный |
| calcar | calcar, āris n | шпора, напоминающий шпору отросток |
| calcification | calcificatio, ōnis f | кальцификация |
| calculous | calculōsus, a, um | калькулезный |
| calf-bone | fibula, ae f | малоберцовая кость |
| camphor | Camphōra, ae f | камфора |
| camphorated oil | Solutio Camphōrae oleosa | камфорное масло |
| cancer | cancer, cri m | канцер, рак |

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| cancerous | carcinomatōsus, a, um | карциноматозный, раковый |
| canine, caninus | canīnus, a, um (dens) | собачий, клыковый (зуб); клык |
| capillary | capillaris, e | капиллярный |
| capitulum | capitūlum, i n | головка |
| capsula | capsūla, ae f | капсула |
| carbonate | carbōnas, ātis m | карбонат |
| carcinoma | carcinōma, ātis n | раковая опухоль, рак |
| cardiac | cardiācus, a, um | сердечный |
| cardiovalen | Cardiovalēnum, i n | кардиовален |
| carefully | caute | осторожно |
| caries | carīes, ēi f | кариес, костоеда |
| carotid | caroticus, a, um | caroticus, a, um |
| carotid artery | carōtis, tīdis (arteria) f | сонная артерия |
| carpal | carpeus, a, um | запястный |
| cartilage | cartilāgo, ĩnis f | хрящ |
| cartilaginous | cartilagineus, a, um | хрящевой |
| case history | anamnēsis, is f | анамнез, воспоминание |
| castor oil | oleum Ricīni | касторовое масло |
| castor-oil plant | Ricīnus, i m | клещевина |
| cataract | cataracta, ae f | катаракта |
| catarrhal | catarrhalis, e | catarrhalis, e |
| causal | causalis, e | причинный |
| cave | caverna, ae f | полость, пещера, каверна |
| cavernous | cavernōsus, a, um | пещеристый |
| cavity, cistern | cavītas, ātis f; cavum, i n | полость, впадина |
| cell | cellula, ae f | клетка, ячейка |
| cellular | cellularis, e | клеточный |
| cement (dental) | cementum, i n | цемент (зубной) |
| central | centralis, e | центральный |
| cerebellar | cerebellaris, e | мозжечковый |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| cerebellum | cerebellum, i n | мозжечок |
| cerebral | cerebralis, e | мозговой, церебральный |
| cerebrospinal | cerebrospinalis, e | спинномозговой |
| cerebrum, brain, encephalon | cerebrum, i n | большой мозг |
| cervical | cervicalis, e | шейный |
| cervicobrachial | cervicobrachialis, e | шейно-плечевой |
| cesarean | caesareus, a, um | царский, кесарев |
| chamber | camera, ae f | камера, полость |
| chamomile | Chamomilla, ae f | ромашка |
| channel | canalis, is m | канал, проход, проток |
| charcoal | carbo, ōnis m | уголь |
| cheek | bucca, ae f | щека |
| cheek bone | zygōma, ātis n | скула, скуловая кость |
| cheek muscle | buccinātor, ōris m | букцинатор, щечная мышца |
| chest | pectus, ōris n; thorax, ācis m | грудь; грудная клетка |
| chewing | masticatorius, a, um | жевательный |
| chicken-pox | varicella, ae f | варицелла, ветряная оспа |
| child | infans, ntis m, f | ребёнок |
| chin | mentum, i n | mentum, i n |
| chinosol | Chinosōlum, i n | хинозол |
| chloride | chloridum, i n | хлорид |
| chloroform | Chloroformium, i n | хлороформ |
| chlorophyllipt | Chlorophylliptum, i n | хлорофиллипт |
| chondrocyte | chondrocýtus, i m | хондроцит |
| chronic | chronicus, a, um | хронический |
| ciliary | ciliaris, e | ресничный |
| chronic | chronicus, a, um | хронический |
| circle | circulus, i m | круг |
| circular | circularis, e | круговой, циркулярный |

| | | |
|--|---|---------------------------------|
| circumflex | circumflēxus, a, um | огибающий |
| cirrhosis | cirrhōsis, is f | цирроз |
| cistern | cisterna, ae f | цистерна |
| citrate | citras, ātis m | цитрат |
| clavicular | clavicularis, e | clavicularis, e |
| coat | tunīca, ae f | оболочка |
| coat of brain | meninx, ngis f | мозговая оболочка |
| coated | obductus, a, um | покрытый оболочкой |
| coccygeal | coccygēus, a, um | копчиковый |
| coccyx | coccyx, ŷgis m | копчик |
| cochlea | cochlea, ae f | улитка (внутреннего уха) |
| cochlear | cochlearis, e | улиточный, относящийся к улитке |
| cocoa (powder) | Cacao n | какао |
| codeine | Codeinum, i n | кодеин |
| cod-liver-oil | oleum Morruae = oleum jecoris Aselli | рыбий жир |
| collar-bone | clavicūla, ae f | ключица |
| collargole | Collargōlum, i n | колларгол |
| collateral | collateralis, e | коллатеральный |
| colon | colon, i n | ободочная кишка |
| colour | color, ōris m | цвет, окраска |
| coltsfoot | Farfara, ae f | мать-и-мачеха |
| column | columna, ae f | колонна, столб |
| coma, loss of consciousness | coma, ātis n | кома, полная потеря сознания |
| commissure | commissūra, ae f | спайка |
| common | communis, e | общий |
| common [cat's] valerian, garden heliotrope | Valeriāna officinalis | лекарственная валериана |
| communicant | communicans, antis | соединяющий |
| complex | compositus, a, um | сложный, суставной |
| complicated | complicātus, a, um | осложнённый |
| concentrated | concentrātus, a, um | концентрированный |

| | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| concha | concha, ae f | раковина |
| concrement | concrementum, i n | конкремент |
| concussion | commotio, ōnis f | сотрясение |
| condylar | condylaris, e | мышцелковый |
| condyle | condylus, i m | мышцелок |
| cone-shaped | conicus, a, um | конусовидный, конический |
| congestive | congestivus, a, um | застойный |
| connecting | conjunctivus, a, um | соединительный, соединительнотканый |
| constrictor | constrictor, ōris m | констриктор (мышца) |
| contraction | contractura, ae f | контрактура, сведение (непроизвольное спастическое сокращение мышц) |
| convolution | gyrus, i m | извилина |
| cord | chorda, ae f | хорда, нить, струна |
| cornea | cornea, ae f | роговица |
| corneal | cornealis, e | роговой |
| coronary | coronarius, a, um | венечный |
| corpse | cadaver, ěris n | труп |
| corrigent | corrigen, entis | исправляющий корригенс |
| corrugator (muscle) | corrugator, ōris m | сморщивающая (мышца) |
| cortex | cortex, ĩcis m | кора, корковое вещество |
| cortical | corticalie, e | корковый |
| costal | costalis, e; costarius, a, um | рёберный |
| coryloid (cup-like) cavity | acetabulum, i n; cavitas, ātis f | вертлужная впадина полость, впадина |
| cough | tussis, is f | кашель |
| cranial | cranialis, e | черепной, краниальный |

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|--|
| cremaster (muscle) | cremāster, ēris m | кремастер; мышца, поднимающая яичко |
| crest | crista, ae f; pecten, ĩnis n | гребень, гребешок |
| cribriform | cribrōsus, a, um | решётчатый |
| cricoesophageal | cricoesophageus, a, um | перстнепищеводный |
| cricoid | cricoideus, a, um | перстневидный |
| cross-shaped | cruciātus, a, um | скрещенный |
| croupous (cruposus) | croupōsus, a, um | крупозный |
| crown | corona, ae f | коронка |
| crown of the head | vertex, ĩcis m | темя, вершина |
| cruciform | cruciformis, e | крестообразный |
| crus | crus, cruris n | голень, ножка |
| crystalline | crystallisātus, a, um | кристаллический |
| cuboidal, cubical | cuboideus, a, um | кубовидный, кубический |
| cup | calyx, ŷcis m | чашка, чашечка |
| curative dose | dosis curativa | лечебная доза, терапевтическая доза |
| cure | cura, ae f | лечение |
| curve | curvatūra, ae f | кривизна |
| cusps | cuspis, ĩdis f | острие, створка |
| cutaneous | cutaneus, a, um | кожный |
| cuticle | cuticula, ae f | кутикула, кожица |
| cutaneous | cutaneus, a, um | кожный |
| cyanide | cyanĭdum, i n | цианид |
| cyst | cysta, ae f | киста |
| cystic | cystōsus, a, um | пузырный, относящийся к мочевому или желчному пузырю |
| cystous | cystōsus, a, um | кистозный |
| D | | |
| daily | in die, de die | ежедневно |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| damaged | laesus, a, um | поврежденный |
| dead | mortuus, a, um | мёртвый, умерший |
| death | mors, mortis f | смерть |
| decoction | decoctum, i n | отвар |
| decussation | chiasma, ātis n; decussatio, ōnis f | перекрест |
| deep | profundus, a, um | глубокий |
| deforming | deformans, antis | деформирующий, обезображивающий |
| delicate | tenius, e | тонкий, нежный |
| deltoid | deltoideus, a, um | дельтовидный |
| dental | dentalis, e | зубной |
| dentine | dentinum, i n | дентин |
| depression | fovea, ae f | ямка, углубление |
| depressor (muscle) | depressor, ōris m | опускатель (мышца) |
| depurated | depurātus, a, um | очищенный |
| descending | descendens, entis | нисходящий |
| diabetes | diabetes, ae m | диабет |
| diabetic | diabeticus, a, um | диабетический |
| diagnosis | diagnōsis, is f | диагноз |
| diameter | diamēter, i f | диаметр, поперечник |
| diaphragm | diaphragma, ātis n | диафрагма |
| diarrhea | diarrhoea, ae f | понос |
| dibazol | Dibazōlum, i n | дибазол |
| diethylstilbestrol, estro- tiben | Diaethy- lstilboestrōlum, i n | диэтилстилбэстрол |
| diffuse | diffusus, a, um | диффузный, разлитой |
| digastric | biventer, tra, trum | двубрюшный (о мышце) |
| digital | digitalis, e | пальцевой |
| dilatation | dilatātio, ōnis f; ectasia, ae f | дилатация, расшире- ние, эктазия |
| diluted | dilūtus, a, um | разбавленный |
| disease, malady, illness, sickness | morbus, i m | болезнь, заболевание |

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| disk | discus, i m | диск |
| disseminated | disseminātus, a, um | диссеминированный |
| dissolved, solute | solūtus, a, um | растворённый |
| distal | distalis, e | дистальный |
| distilled | destillatus, a, um | дистиллированный |
| distinction | differentia, ae f | различие |
| diverticulum | diverticulum, i n | дивертикул, выпячивание |
| divide | divido, ěre III | разделять |
| divide into equal parts | div. in p. aeq(u). = di- vide in partes aequales | раздели на равные части (сокр. в рецептах) |
| do not repeat | ne repetatur, ne repet. (сокр. в рецептах) | не повторять, т.е. не приготавливать повтор- но предписанное в рецепте и уже один раз приготовленное лекарство; |
| domestic | domesticus, a, um | домашний |
| dorsal | dorsalis, e | спинной, тыльный, дорсальный |
| dose | dosis, is f | доза |
| dragee | dragee | драже |
| drop | gutta, ae f | капля |
| drug | medicamentum, i n; pharmacōn, i n | лекарство |
| drugstore | officīna, ae f | мастерская, аптека |
| drum | tympānum, i n | барабан |
| dry | siccus, a, um | сухой |
| duct | ductus, us m | проток |
| ductile | ductulus, i m | проточек |
| duodenal | duodenalis, e | дуоденальный, двенадцатиперстный |
| duodenum | duodenum, i n | двенадцатиперстная кишка |
| duplex, double | duplex, icis | двойной, двоянный |

| | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| dura mater | dura mater | твёрдая мозговая оболочка |
| dyspnea, shortness of breath | dyspnoë, ës f (dyspnoea) | диспноэ/отдышка |
| Е | | |
| ear | auris, is f | ухо |
| eczema | eczēma, ātis n | экзема |
| edema | oedēma, ātis n | отёк |
| edematous | oedematōsus, a, um | эдематозный, отечный |
| efferent | efferens, entis | эфферентный, выносящий, |
| egg cell | ovum, i n | яйцо, яйцеклетка |
| eight | octo | восемь |
| eighth | octavus, a, um | восьмой |
| elbow bone | ulna, ae f | локтевая кость |
| elbow process | olecrānon, i n | локтевой отросток |
| eleven | undecim | одиннадцать |
| eleventh | undecimus, a, um | одиннадцатый |
| eminence | eminentia, ae f | возвышение |
| emphysema | emphysēma, ātis m | эмфизема, увеличе- ние количества воздуха в органах |
| emulsion | emulsum, i n; emulsio, ōnis f | эмульсия |
| enamel | enamēlum, i n | эмаль |
| end | terminatio, ōnis f | конец, окончание |
| endemic | endemicus, a, um | эндемический, свой- ственный данной области, местный |
| enough | satis | довольно, достаточно |
| entrance | adītus, us m | вход |
| epidemic | epidemicus, a, um | эпидемический |
| epigastric | epigastricus, a, um | надчревный |
| epiglottis | epiglottis, īdis f | надгортанник |

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| epinephrine | Adrenalīnum, i, n | адреналин |
| epiphysial | epiphysialis, e | эпифизарный |
| epiphysis | epiphysis, is f | эпифиз |
| epithelial | epithelialis, e | эпителиальный |
| equal | aequalis, e | равный |
| equally | ana | поровну, по |
| erector (muscle) | erector, oris m | выпрямитель (мышца) |
| esophageal | (o)esophageus, a, um | пищеводный |
| esophagus, gullet | oesophagus, i m | пищевод |
| essential oil | oleum aethereum | эфирное масло |
| eternal | aeternus, a, um | вечный |
| ether, ester | aether, ěris m | эфир |
| ethereal | aethereus, a, um | эфирный |
| ethmoid | ethmoidalis, e | решетчатый |
| ethyl | aethylicus, a, um | этиловый |
| ethyl | Aethylium, i n | этил |
| ethyl morphine | Aethylmorphīnum, i n | этилморфин |
| every hour | omni hora (omn. hor.) | каждый час |
| every hour | quaquehora, q.h. | каждый час (в рецептах) |
| every two hours | omni bihora (omn.bih.) | каждые два часа |
| extremity | extremītas, ātis f | конец |
| extended | extensus, a, um | вытянутый |
| extension | extensio, ōnis f | разгибание, растягивание |
| extensor (muscle) | extensor, ōris m | разгибатель (мышца) |
| external | externus, a, um | наружный |
| extirpation | extirpatio, ōnis f | экстирпация, искоренение |
| extract | extractum, i n | экстракт (вытяжка) |
| extraction | extractio, ōnis f | извлечение |
| extrauterine | extrauterīnus, a, um | внематочный |
| eye | ocūlus, i m | глаз |

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--|
| eye socket | orbīta, ae f | глазница |
| eyeball | bulbus oculi | bulbus oculi |
| eyebrow | supercilium, i n | бровь |
| eyelid | palpebra, ae f | веко |
| F | | |
| facial | facialis, e | лицевой, поверхностный |
| false recollection | paramnesia, ae f | парамнезия, псевдо- воспоминания |
| fascia | fascia, ae f | фасция |
| fascicle | fasciculus, i m | пучок |
| fauces | fauces, ium f (pl) | зев |
| feminine | femininus, a, um | женский |
| fetus, f(o)etus | fetus, us m, foetus, us m | плод (утробный, от 9-й недели до рождения) |
| fever | febris, is f | лихорадка |
| feverish | febrillīs, e | лихорадочный |
| fibre | fībra, ae f | волокно |
| fibrous | fībrosus, a, um | фиброзный, волокнистый |
| fifth | quintus, a, um | пятый |
| film | membranula, ae f | плёнка |
| finger, toe | digitus, i m | палец |
| finger-shaped | digitatus, a, um | пальцевидный |
| finish | finio, īre IV | оканчивать, заканчи- вать, кончать |
| first | primus, a, um | первый |
| fissure | fissura, ae f | щель |
| five | quinque | пять |
| flat | planus, a, um | плоский |
| flax | Linum, i n | лен |
| flexion | flexio, ōnis f | сгибание |
| flexor(muscle) | flexor, ōris m | сгибатель (мышца) |
| flexure | flexura, ae f | изгиб |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| flower | flos, floris m | цветок; цветущее состояние |
| fluid | fluidus, a, um | жидкий |
| fluid | liquor, oris m | жидкость, раствор |
| fold | plica, ae f | складка |
| follicle | folliculus, i m | фолликул, пузырьк |
| fontanelle | fonticulus, i m | родничок |
| food | cibus, i m | еда, пища |
| foot | pes, pedis m | стопа, нога |
| for | pro (с Abl.) | для, за |
| for external use | ad us. ext. = ad usum externum | для наружного употребления |
| for internal use | ad us. int. = ad usum internum | для внутреннего употребления |
| for the personal use of the physician | ad us. propr. = ad usum proprium | для личного (собственного) употребления |
| forefinger | index, icis m | указатель, указательный палец |
| forehead | frons, frontis f | лоб |
| form | forma, ae f | форма |
| four | quattuor | четыре |
| fourth | quartus, a, um | четвёртый |
| fracture | fractūra, ae f | перелом |
| frenulum | frenulum, i n | уздечка |
| frequent | frequens, entis | частый, учащенный |
| from | a, ab (с Abl.) | от |
| frontal | frontalis, e | лобный |
| fruit | fructus, us m | плод (раст.) |
| function | functio, ōnis f | действие, функция; исполнение; обязанность |
| fungoid | fungiformis, e | грибовидный |
| funnel | infundibulum, i n | воронка |
| fusiform, spindle-shaped | fusiformis, e | веретеновидный, веретенообразный |

| G | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| gallbladder | vesīca fellea, vesīca biliaris | желчный пузырь |
| ganglion | ganglion, i n | ганглий (нервный узел) |
| gap | hiātus, us m | щель, расщелина |
| gastric | gastricus, a, um | желудочный |
| gastroduodenal | gastroduodenalis, e | желудочно-двенадцати- перстно-кишечный |
| gate | porta, ae f | ворота |
| generad | generalis, e | генеральный, общий |
| geniohyoid | geniohyoideus, a, um | подбородочно- подъязычный |
| genital | genitalis, e | половой, генитальный |
| genitourinary | urogenitalis, e | мочеполовой |
| giant-cell (attr.) | gigantocellularis, e | гигантоклеточный |
| gingival | gingivalis, e | десневой |
| girdle | cingulum, i n | пояс |
| give | do, dāre I | давать, выдавать |
| give out | D.= da, detur, dentur | дай, выдай, пусть будет дано (сокр. в рецептах) |
| gland | glandula, ae f | железа |
| glaucoma | glaucōma, ātis n | глаукома |
| globule, small pill, cot- ton pellet | globulus, i n | шарик |
| glomus, glome | glomus, ěris n | клубок, гломус (сосудистый) |
| glossopharyngeal nerve, 9th cranial nerve | glossopharyngeus, a, um (nervus) | языкоглоточный |
| glottis | glottis, īdis f | голосовая щель, собственно голосовой аппарат |
| gluconate | glucōnas, ātis m | глюконат |

| | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| glucose | Glucōsum, i n | глюкоза |
| gluteal | gluteus, a, um | ягодичный |
| glycerophosphate | glycerophōsphas, ātis m | глицерофосфат |
| gold(en) | aureus, a, um | золотой |
| good | bonum, i n | добро |
| good | bonus, a, um | хороший |
| gram, gramme | gramma, ātis n | грамм |
| granule | granulum, i n | гранула, крупинка |
| great nightshade | Belladonna, ae f | белладонна, красавка |
| great, large | magnus, a, um | большой, больший |
| greater | major, jus | большой |
| greatest | maxīmus, a, um | наибольший, большой |
| grey | cinereus, a, um | серый |
| groin | inguen, īnis n | пах |
| groove | sulcus, i m | борозда, бороздка |
| gum | gingiva, ae f | десна |
| gum-tree | Eucalyptus, i f | Эвкалипт |
| Н | | |
| hand | manus, us f | кисть руки, рука |
| hard | durus, a, um | твёрдый |
| hawthorn | Cratāegus, i f | боярышник |
| head | caput, ītis n | голова, головка |
| health | valetūdo, īnis f | здоровье |
| hearing | audītus, us m | слух, способность слышать |
| heart | cor, cordis n | сердце |
| heat | calor, ōris m | теплота, жар |
| heel | calx, calcis f | пята, пятка |
| heel bone | calcaneus, i m | пяточная кость |
| help | adjuvo, āre I | помогать |
| hemisphere | hemispherium, i n | полушарие |
| hepatic | hepaticus, a, um | печёночный |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| herb | herba, ae f | лекарственная трава |
| hernia | hernia, ae f | грыжа |
| hernial | hernialis, e | грыжевой |
| herpes | herpes, ětis m | герпес, пузырьковый лишай |
| highest | suprĕmus, a, um | самый высокий, высочайший, наивысший |
| hilus | hilus, i m | ворота |
| hip-bone | coxa, ae f | таз, бедро |
| hip-joint | coxa, ae f | тазобедренный сустав |
| hippocamp(us) | hippocampus, i m | гиппокамп |
| Hippocratic | hippocraticus, a, um | Гиппократов |
| hollow | cavus, a, um | полый, пустой, впалый |
| hollow | fossa, ae f | ямка, яма |
| homatropine | Homatropĭnum, i n | гоматропин |
| honey | mel, mellis n | мёд |
| honour | honor, čris m | честь, почестъ |
| hooklet | hamulus, i m | крючок (крючковид- ный отросток) |
| hook-shaped | hamatus, a, um | крючковидный |
| horizontal | horizontalis, e | горизонтальный |
| horn | cornu, us n | рог, рожок |
| how much, as much as | quantum, i n | сколько |
| humeral | humeralis, e | плечевой |
| hydrobromide | hydrobromĭdum, i n | гидробромид |
| hydrochloride | Hydrochlorĭdum, i n, | гидрохлорид |
| hydrogen | Hydrogenium, i n | водород |
| hydrochlorothiazide dichlothiazide | Dichlothiazĭdum, i n | дихлотиазид |
| hydrogen carbonate | hydrocarbōnas, ātis m | гидрокарбонат |
| hydroiodide | hydroiodĭdum, i n | гидроиодид |
| hydrotartrate | hydrotārtras, ātis m | гидротартрат |

| | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---|
| hydroxide | hydroxŷdum, i n | гидроксид |
| hyoid | hyoideus, a, um | подъязычный |
| hypogastric | hypogastricus, a, um | подчервный |
| hypoglossal | hypoglossus, a, um | подъязычный (нерв) |
| hypophysis | hypophŷsis, is f | гипофиз |
| I | | |
| I | ego | я |
| ichthammol | Ichthyŷlum, i n | ихтиол |
| iliac | iliŷcus, a, um | подвздошный |
| iliac region | ile, ilis n; ilia, ilium pl | подвздошная область |
| iliohypogastric | iliohypogastricus, a, um | подвздошно-подчервный |
| ill | aegrŷtus, a, um | больной |
| impression | impressio, ŷnis f | вдавление |
| In | in | в, на (с Acc. на вопрос куда?; с Abl. на вопрос где?) |
| in equal parts | p. aeq. = partes aequales | в равных частях, равными частями сокр. в рецептах) |
| in twos | bini, ae, a | по два |
| incision | incisio, ŷnis f | надрез, насечка |
| incisor (adj.) | incisŷvus, a, um | резцовый |
| incisure | incisŷra, ae f | вырезка |
| incurable | insanabilis, e | неизлечимый |
| inflammation | inflammatio, ŷnis f | воспаление |
| inflammatory | inflammatorius, a, um | воспалительный |
| infraclavicular | infraclavicularis, e | подключичный |
| infrahyoid | infrahyoideus, a, um | подподъязычный |
| infrajugular | infrajugularis, e | подъязырный |
| infraorbital | infraorbitalis, e | подглазничный |
| infusion | infusum, i n | настой |
| inguinal | inguinalis, e | паховый |
| injection | injectio, ŷnis f | инъекция |
| insufficiency | insufficientia, ae f | недостаточность |

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| intact | integer, gra, grum | неповрежденный |
| intercostal | intercostalis, e | межреберный |
| interlobular | interlobularis, e | междольковый |
| intermediary | intermedius, a, um | средний, промежуточный |
| intermittent | intermittens, entis | перемежающийся, прерывистый |
| intermuscular | intermuscularis, e | межмышечный |
| internal | internus, a, um | внутренний |
| internal organs | splanchna (pl), viscera (pl) | внутренности |
| interosseous | interosseus, a, um | межкостный |
| interstitial | interstitialis, e | промежуточный |
| intervertebral | intervertebralis, e | межпозвоночный |
| intestinal | intestinalis, e | кишечный |
| intestine | intestīnum, i | кишка |
| intra-articular | intraarticularis, e | внутрисуставной |
| intramuscular | intramuscularis, e | внутримышечный |
| inverted | inversus, a, um | перевернутый, извращенный |
| iodide | iodīdum, i n | йод |
| iris | iris, īdis f | радужка, радужная оболочка |
| ischadic | ischadicus, a, um | седалищный |
| ischium | ischium, i n | седалище |
| isotonic | isotonicus, a, um | изотонический |
| isthmus | isthmus, i n | перешеек |
| itch | pruritus, us m | зуд кожи или слизистых оболочек |
| J | | |
| jaundice | icterus, i m | желтуха |
| jejunal | jejunalis, e | относящийся к тощей кишке |
| jejunum | jejunum, i n | тощая кишка |
| joint | articulatio, ōnis f | сустав |

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|---|
| jugular | jugularis, e | ярёмный |
| juice | succus, i m | сок |
| junction | junctūra, ae f | соединение |
| juniper | Junipĕrus, i f | можжевельник |
| juvenile | juvenilis, e | юношеский, молодой |
| К | | |
| kaolin | bolus, i f | белая глина, каолит (силикат алюминия) |
| kidney | ren, renis m | почка |
| knee | genu, us n | колени |
| knee-cap | patella, ae f | надколенник |
| known | notus, a, um | известный |
| L | | |
| labyrinth | labyrinthus, i m | лабиринт, внутреннее ухо |
| labyrinthine | labyrinthicus, a, um | лабиринтный |
| lacrimal | lacrimalis, e | слёзный |
| lactate | lactas, ātis m | лактат |
| large intestine | intestinum crassum | толстая кишка |
| larynx | larynx, ýngis m | гортань |
| late | serotīnus, a, um | поздний, запоздалый |
| lateral | lateralis, e | боковой |
| Latin | Latīnus, a, um | латинский |
| laxative | laxans, antis | слабительный |
| layer | stratum, i n | слой |
| lead | Plumbum, i n | свинец |
| leaf | folium, i n | лист, листок |
| leech | hirūdo, ĩnis f | пиявка |
| left | sinister, tra, trum | 1. левый 2. неблагоприятный |
| lens | lens, lentis f | хрусталик |
| lesser | minor, minus | малый, меньший |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| let there be made; so that there is | f., F. = fiat, fiant | пусть будет сделано, пусть будут сделаны (сделай, приготовь!) сокр. в рецептах |
| lethal dose | dosis letalis | летальная доза, смертельная доза (доза лекарства и др., могущая вызывать смерть) |
| lethal, fatal, mortal | letalis, e | смертельный |
| levator | levator, ōris m | подниматель, поднимающая мышца |
| life | vita, ae f | жизнь |
| ligament | ligamentum, i n | связка |
| lily-of-the valley | Convallaria, ae f | ландыш |
| limb | membrum, i n | конечность, член |
| line | linea, ae f | линия, черта |
| lingual | lingualis, e | язычный |
| liniment | linimentum, i n | линимент |
| lip | labium, i n | губа |
| liquid ammonia | solutio Ammonii caustici | нашатырный спирт, раствор аммиака |
| liquid ammonia anise dripped | liquor Ammonii anisatus (i) | нашатырно-анисовые капли |
| liquid paraffin | oleum Paraffini = oleum Vaselini | вазелиновое масло |
| liquid paraffin | oleum Vaselini sive Paraffinum liquidum | вазелиновое масло, жидкий парафин |
| listen | audio, ĩre IV | слушать |
| liver | hepar, ātis n | печень |
| lobar | lobaris, e | долевой |
| lobe | lobulus, i m | долька |
| local | localis, e | местный |
| loin | lumbus, i m | поясница |
| long | longus, a, um | длинный |
| longitudinal | longitudinalis, e | продольный |

| | | |
|---|---------------------------------|---|
| lower | inferior, ius | нижний |
| lower jaw | mandibula, ae f | нижняя челюсть |
| lozenge | pastillus, i m | лекарственная пастилка |
| lumbar | lumbalis, e | поясничный |
| lumbosacral | lumbosacralis, e | пояснично- крестцовый |
| lung | pulmo, ōnis m | легкое |
| lychnis | Adōnis, ūdis m, f | адонис, горичвет |
| lymphatic | lymphaticus, a, um | лимфатический |
| М | | |
| m. dilator | dilatātor, ōris m (musculus) | расширяющая мышца |
| malignant | malignus, a, um | злокачественный |
| man | homo, ĩnis m | человек |
| mandibular | mandibularis e | нижнечелюстной |
| marrow | medulla, ae f | мозговое вещество |
| masculine | masculus, a, um | мужской |
| masseter (muscle) | massēter, ēris m | жевательная мышца |
| mastoid | mastoideus, a, um | сосцевидный |
| matrix | matrix, ĩcis f | ложе, основание |
| maxillary | maxillaris, e | верхнечелюстной |
| maximum dose | dosis maxĭma | максимальная доза, которую может при- нять человек без опасности для здоровья |
| medial | medialis, e | средний, медиальный |
| median | mediānus, a, um | срединный |
| mediastinal | mediastinalis, e | средостенный |
| mediastinum | mediastinum, i n | средостение |
| medical certificate, certificate of health | relatio medica | медицинское свидетельство |
| medicinal | medicinalis, e | лекарственный |
| medicine | medicĭna, ae f | медицина |

| | | |
|--|-----------------------------|--|
| membranaceous | membranaceus, a, um | перепончатый |
| membrane | membrāna, ae f | мембрана, перепонка |
| memory | memoria, ae f | память |
| mental | mentalis, e | подбородочный |
| menthol | Menthōlum, i n | ментол |
| metacarpus | metacarpus, i m | пять |
| metastasis | metastāsis, is f | метастаз |
| metastatic | metastaticus, a, um | метастатический |
| methyl salicylate | Methylī salicylas (ātis), m | метилсалицилат |
| methylene blue | Methylēnum coeruleum | метиленовый синий |
| methylestradiol | Methyloestradiolum, i n | метилэстрадиол |
| middle | medius, a, um | средний |
| milfoil | Millefolium, i n | тысячелистник |
| milk | lac, lactis n | молоко |
| milk, baby, deciduous, first, primary, temporary | deciduus (dens) | отпадающий, молочный (о зубе) |
| mind, intellect | mens, mentis f | ум |
| minimum lethal dose | dosis letalis minima | минимальная смертельная (летальная) доза |
| mint | Mentha, ae f | мята |
| minute fovea, minute pit | foveola, ae f | ямочка |
| mitral | mitralis, e | митральный, двустворчатый |
| mix | misceo, ēre II | мешать, смешивать |
| mix! | M. = misce | смешай! |
| mixed | mixtus, a, um | смешанный |
| mixture | mixtura, ae f | микстура |
| molar (attr.) | molaris, e | большой коренной (зуб), моляр |

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| monobromated camphora | Bromcamphora, ae f | бромкамфора |
| mother, mater | mater, tris f | мать, мозговая оболочка |
| motherwort | Leonurus, i m | пустырник |
| motor (attr.) | motorius, a, um | моторный, двигательный |
| mouth | os, oris n | рот |
| mouth | ostium, i n | отверстие, устье |
| mouth, artificial opening | stoma, ātis n | рот, уста, искусственное отверстие |
| movable | mobīlis, e | подвижный, блуждающий |
| mucilage | mucilāgo, īis f | слизь (лек. ф.) |
| mucous | mucōsus, a, um | слизистый |
| mucus | mucus, i m | слизь |
| muscle | musculus, i m | мышца |
| muscular | muscularis, e | мышечный |
| mylohyoid | mylohyoideus, a, um | челюстно-подъязычный |
| myocardium | myocardium, i n | миокард |
| N | | |
| nail | unguis, is m | ноготь |
| name | nomen, īnis n | название, имя |
| nape | nucha, ae f | выя |
| naphthalan | Naphthalānum, i n | нафталан |
| nasal | nasalis, e | носовой |
| naasiliary | nasociliaris, e | носоресничный |
| nasolacrimal | nasolacrimalis, e | носослезный |
| natal | natalis, e | относящийся к рождению, родной |
| neck | cervix, īcis f; collum, i n | шея, шейка |
| necrosis | necrōsis, is f | некроз, омертвление |

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| necrotic | necroticus, a, um | омертвельный, омертвевший |
| nerve | nervus, i m | нерв |
| nervous | nervōsus, a, um | нервный |
| fettle | Urtīca, ae f | крапива |
| network | rete, is n | сеть, сетка |
| neuter | neuter, tra, trum | средний (род) |
| newgrowth | neoplasma, ātis n | новообразование, опухоль |
| nine | novem | девять |
| ninth | nonus, a, um | девятый |
| nipple, papilla | papilla, ae f | сосок, сосочек |
| nitrate | nitras, ātis m | нитрат |
| nitrite | nitris, itis m | нитрит |
| nitrogen | Nitrogenium, i n | азот |
| node | nodus, i m | узел |
| nodule | nodulus, i m | узелок |
| nose | nasus, i m | нос |
| nostril | naris, is f | ноздря |
| not | non | не |
| nuclear | nuclearis, e | ядерный |
| nucleus | nucleus, i m | ядро |
| number | numerus, i m | число |
| nut | nux, nucis f | орех |
| nutrient | nutriens, entis | относящийся к пита- нию, доставляющий пищу, питающий |
| nutritious | nutricius, a, um | питательный |
| О | | |
| oak | Quercus, us f | дуб |
| oblique | obliquus, a, um | косой, наклонный |
| oblong | oblongātus, a, um | продолговатый |
| occipital | occipitalis, e | затылочный |
| occipitofrontal | occipitofrontalis, e | затылочно-лобный |

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| occipitotemporal | occipitotemporalis, e | затылочно-височный |
| occiput | occīput, ĭtis n | затылок |
| octestrol | Octoestrōlum, i n | октэстрол |
| ocular | ocularis, e | окулярный, глазной |
| oculomotor(ius) | oculomotorius, a, um | глазодвигательный |
| oil | oleum, i n | масло |
| oily | oleosus, a, um | масляный |
| ointment | unguentum, i n | мазь |
| olfactory | olfactorius, a, um | обонятельный |
| olive | Olīva, ae f | олива (плод) |
| olive oil | oleum Olivārum | оливковое масло |
| omentum | omentum, i n | сальник |
| one | unus, a, um | один |
| open | apertus, a, um | открытый |
| opening | forāmen, ĩnis n | отверстие |
| ophthalmic | ophthalmicus, a, um | глазной |
| ophthalmic remedies | ophthalmica (remedia), n/pl | глазные лекарственные средства |
| optic | opticus, a, um | зрительный, оптический |
| or | seu | или |
| oral | oralis, e | ротовой |
| orbicular | orbicularis, e | орбикулярный, круговой, кольцевой |
| orbital | orbitalis, e | глазничный |
| organ | organum, i n | орган |
| organism | organismus, i m | организм |
| orotate | orōtas, ātis m | оротат |
| orthodontics | orthodontia, ae f | ортодонтия |
| oval | ovalis, e | овальный |
| ovary | ovarium, i n | яичник |
| over | supra | над, выше, на |
| oxide | oxŷdum, i n | оксид |

| P | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---|
| pain | dolor, ōris m | боль |
| palate | palātum, i n | небо |
| palatine, palatal | palatīnus, a, um | нёбный |
| palatoglossal | palatoglossus, a, um | нёбно-язычный |
| palmar | palmaris, e | ладонный |
| pancreas | pancreas, ātis n | поджелудочная железа |
| papillary | papillaris, e | папиллярный, сосочковый |
| paralysis | paralysis, is f | паралич |
| parasacral | parasacralis, e | парасакральный, околокрестцовый, расположенный около крестцовой кости |
| parasternal | parasternalis, e | окологрудинный |
| parathyroid(al) | parathyroideus, a, um | околощитовидный |
| parenchyma | parenchýma, ātis n | паренхима |
| parietal | parietalis, e | теменной, пристеночный |
| parietooccipital | parietooccipitalis, e | теменно-затылочный |
| parotic | paroticus, a, um | паратидный, околоушный |
| parotid gland | parōtis, otīdis f | околоушная железа |
| part, portion | pars, partis f | часть, сторона |
| partial | partialis, e | частичный |
| partial paralysis | parēsis, is f | парез |
| partition | septum, i n | перегородка |
| passage | meātus, us m | проход, ход |
| paste | pasta, ae f | паста |
| patellar | patellaris, e | пателлярный |
| patient | aeger, gri m | больной |
| peach | Persīcum, i n | персик |
| peach oil | oleum Persicōrum | персиковое масло |
| pectoral | pectoralis, e | грудной |

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| pelvic | pelvinus, a, um; pelvicus, a, um | тазовый |
| pelvis | pelvis, is f | таз, лоханка |
| pen | calāmus, i m | перо (писчее) |
| pentylrietetrazol | Corazōlum, i n | коразол |
| pepper (adj.) | piperītus, a, um | перечный |
| per day, daily | pro die | в день, в сутки |
| perforating | perforans, āntis | прободающий |
| periarterial | periarterialis, e | периартериальный, вокругартериальный |
| peridental membrane | periodontium, i n | периодонт, надкостница зуба |
| perineum, fork | perineum, i n | промежность |
| periodontium | parodontium, i n paradentium, i n | пародонт |
| periosteum | periosteum, i n | надкостница |
| peritoneum | peritoneum, i n | брюшина |
| perivascular | perivascularis, e | периваскулярный, вокругсосудистый |
| peroneal | fibularis, e | малоберцовый |
| peroneal | peronēus, a, um | малоберцовый |
| peroxide | peroxĭdum, i n | пероксид |
| petrous | petrosus, a, um | каменистый |
| phalanx | phalanx, ngis f | фаланга |
| pharmaceutics | pharmacia, ae f | фармация |
| pharyngeal | pharyngēus, a, um | глоточный |
| pharynx | pharynx, ngis m | глотка |
| phenyl salicylate | Phenylii salicylas (ātis) m | фенилсалицилат |
| phosphate | phosphas, ātis m | фосфат |
| physician | aesculapius, i m | эскулап |
| physician | medicus, i m | врач |
| pia mater | pia mater, tris f | мягкая мозговая оболочка |
| pill | pilula, ae f | пилюля |

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| pituitary | pituitarius, a, um | питуитарный |
| place, spot | locus, i m | место |
| plane | planum, i n | плоскость |
| plantar | plantaris, e | подошвенный |
| plasma | plasma, ātis n | плазма |
| plaster | emplastrum, i n | пластырь |
| plate | lamella, ae f | пластинка |
| plate | lamīna, ae f | пластинка |
| platysma | platýsma, ātis n | платизма |
| plexus | plexus, us m | сплетение |
| plowshare | vomer, ěris m | сошник |
| pneumonia | pneumonia, ae f | пневмония |
| poison | venĕnum, i n | яд |
| polyp | polýpus, i m | полип |
| post mortem, sectio legalis | sectio legalis | судебно-медицинское вскрытие |
| postcibal, after meals, after eating | postcibos (p. c.) | после еды |
| posterior | posterior, ius | задний |
| postganglionic | postganglionaris, e | постганглионарный |
| pouch | bursa, ae f | сумка, мешок |
| powder | pulvis, ěris m | порошок |
| powerful | heroicus, a, um | сильнодействующий |
| precentral | praecentralis, e | прецентральный, предцентральный |
| prescription | praescrīptio, ōnis f, receptum, i n | рецепт |
| presternum | manubrium, i n | рукоятка |
| prevention of disease | prophylāxis, is f | профилактика |
| process | processus, us m | отросток |
| prognosis | prognōsis, is f | прогноз |
| pronation | pronatio, ōnis f | пронация, поворот ладони вниз |
| pronator (muscle) | pronātor, ōris m | пронатор |

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| proper | proprius, a, um | собственный |
| propionate | propionas, ātis m | пропионат |
| prostate gland | prostāta, ae f | предстательная железа |
| prostatic | prostaticus, a, um | предстательный |
| protuberance | protuberantia, ae f | выступ, бугор |
| proximal | proximalis, e | проксимальный |
| psoas (muscle) | psoas, ātis m | поясничная (мышца) |
| pterygoid, wing-shaped | pterygoideus, a, um | крыловидный |
| pterygopalatine | pterygopalatinus, a, um | крылонебный |
| pubis | pubes, is f | лобок |
| pulmonary | pulmonalis, e | легочный |
| pulp | pulpa, ae f | пульпа, мякоть |
| pulse | pulsus, us m | пульс |
| puncture | punctio, ōnis f | пункция, прокол |
| pupil | pupilla, ae f | зрачок |
| pure | purus, a, um | чистый |
| purified | purificatus, a, um | очищенный |
| pus | pus, puris n | гной |
| pyloric | pyloricus, a, um | привратниковый |
| pylorus | pylōrus, i m | привратник, пилорус |
| pyramid | pyrāmis, īdis f | пирамида |
| pyramidal | pyramidalis, e | пирамидальный |
| Q | | |
| quadriceps | quadriceps, cipītis | четырёхглавый |
| quadrigeminal | quadrigemīnus, a, um | четырёхпарный, четвертной |
| quick | celer, ēris, ēre | быстрый |
| quickly | celeriter | быстро |
| quickly | cito | быстро |
| quinine | Chinīnum, i n | хинин |
| R | | |
| rabies | rabies, ēi f | бешенство |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| rachidian bulb | medulla oblongāta | продолговатый мозг |
| radial | radialis, e | лучевой |
| radiation | radiatio, ōnis f | лучистость |
| radius, radial (spoke) bone | radius, i m | лучевая кость |
| recess | recessus, us m | углубление, карман |
| rectal | rectalis, e | ректальный |
| rectified | rectificātus, a, um | очищенный |
| rectum | rectum, i n | прямая кишка |
| red | ruber, bra, brum | красный |
| redness | rubor, ōris | покраснение |
| region | regio, ōnis f | область |
| remedy | remedium, i n | средство |
| renal | renalis, e | почечный |
| renal pelvis | pelvis renalis | почечная лоханка |
| repeat | repeto, ěre III | повторять |
| resection, excision | resectio, ōnis f | резекция |
| respiration, breathing | respiratio, ōnis f | дыхание |
| respiratory | respiratorius, a, um | дыхательный |
| resuscitation | reanimatio, ōnis f | реанимация |
| retaining band | retinaculum, i n | удерживатель |
| reticular | reticularis, e | ретикулярный |
| retina | retīna, ae f | сетчатка |
| retromandibular | retromandibularis, e | позадинижне- челюстной |
| retroperitoneal | retroperitonealis, e | забрюшинный |
| rhizome | rhizōma, ātis n | корневище |
| rhombic | rhomboideus, a, um | ромбовидный |
| rhubarb | Rheum, i n | ревень |
| rib | costa, ae f | ребро |
| ridge | jugum, i n | возвышение |
| right | dexter, tra, trum | правый |
| ring | anulus, i m | кольцо, ободок |
| roof | tegmen, ĩnis n | крыша, покрывка |

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| root | radix, īcis f | корень, корешок |
| rotator (muscle) | rotātor, ōris m | вращатель (мышца) |
| rough | asper, ěra, ěrum | шероховатый; суровый |
| roughness | asperitas, ātis, f | шероховатость |
| round | rotundus, a, um | круглый (отверстие) |
| round and long | teres, ětis | круглый |
| rupture | ruptura, ae f | разрыв |
| S | | |
| sacral | sacralis, e | крестцовый |
| sacred | sacer, cra, crum | крестцовый (кость) |
| sacrococcygeal | sacrococcygeus, a, um | крестцово- копчиковый |
| saddle | sella, ae f | седло |
| sage | Salvia, ae f | шалфей |
| sagittal | sagittalis, e | сагиттальный (стреловидный) |
| salicylate | salicylas, ātis m | салицилат |
| salicylic | salicylicus, a, um | салициловый |
| salt | sal, salis m | соль |
| sarcoma | sarcōma, ātis n | саркома |
| scabies | scabies, ěi f | чесотка |
| scale | squama, ae f | чешуя |
| scalenus (muscle) | scalenus, a, um | лестничный (мышца) |
| scaphoid | scaphoideus, a, um | ладьевидный |
| scapulohypoglossal | omohyoideus, a, um | лопаточно- подъязычный |
| scar | cicatrix, īcis f | рубец, шрам |
| sea buckthorn | Hippophaë, ěs f | облепиха |
| seam, rhaphe | raphe, es f | шов (на мягких тканях) |
| second | secundus, a, um | второй |
| secondary | secundarius, a, um | вторичный |
| secretion | secretum, i n | секрет |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| section | sectio, ōnis f | рассечение, вскрытие |
| sedatives | sedatīva (remedia), n/pl | седативные лекар- ственные средства |
| seed, semen | semen, ĩnis n | семя, семенная жид- кость |
| semicircular | semicircularis, e | полукруглый |
| semilunar | semilunaris, e | полулунный, серпо- видный |
| senile | senilis, e | старческий |
| sense | sensus, us m | чувство |
| sensory | sensorius, a, um | чувствительный, сенсорный |
| septal | septalis, e | перегородочный |
| sugar | saccharum, i n | сахар |
| sulphate | sulfās, ātis m | сульфат |
| sulphur | Sulfur, ūris n | сера |
| sunflower | Helianthus, i m | подсолнечник |
| sunflower oil | oleum Helianthi | подсолнечное масло |
| superficial | superficialis, e | поверхностный |
| superficies | superficies, ēi f | наружная поверхность |
| superior | superior, ius | верхний |
| supination | supinātio, ōnis f | супинация, поворот ладони вверх |
| supinator (muscle) | supinātor, ōris m | супинатор (мышца) |
| suppository (pl suppositories) | suppositorium, i n | суппозиторий, свеча |
| supraclavicular | supraclavicularis, e | надключичный |
| suprahyoid | suprahyoideus, a, um | надподязычный |
| supraorbital | supraorbitalis, e | надглазничный |
| suprarenal | suprarenalis, e | надпочечный |
| surface | facies, ēi f | лицо, поверхность |
| surgery | chirurgia, ae f | хирургия |
| suspension | suspensio, ōnis f | суспензия |
| suture | sutura, ae f | шов |

| | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|--|
| sweet | dulcis, e | сладкий |
| sympathic | sympathicus, a, um | симпатический |
| synestrol | Synoestrōlum, i n | синэстрол |
| synovial | synovialis, e | синовиальный |
| syrette | spritz-tubulus, i m | шприц-тюбик |
| syrup | sirūpus, i m | сироп |
| system | systēma, ātis n | система |
| Т | | |
| tabes | tabes, is f | сухотка |
| tablet | tabuletta, ae f | таблетка |
| take | recipio, ěre III | взять |
| Take! | Recīpe! | Возьми! |
| talc | Talcum, i n | тальк |
| tall | altus, a, um | высокий |
| talocrural | talocruralis, e | голеностопный |
| tannin, tannins | Tannīnum, i n | танин |
| tarsus | tarsus, i m | предплюсна, хрящ века |
| tea | species, ēi f | сбор (трав), чай |
| teacher | doctor, ōris m | учитель |
| tear | lacrīma, ae f | слеза |
| temple, time | tempus, ōris n | висок, время |
| temporal | temporalis, e | височный |
| ten | decem | десять |
| tendon | tendo, ĩnis m | сухожилие |
| tensor muscle | tensor, ōris m | напрягающая мышца |
| terminal | terminalis, e | терминальный, конечный |
| testicle | testis, is m | яичко, семенник |
| test-tube | vitrum, i n | склянка, пробирка |
| thalamus | thalāmus, i m | таламус (зрительный бугор) |
| therapeutics | therapeutica, ae f | терапевтика, наука о лечении болезней, наука о терапии |

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| therapy | therapia, ae f | терапия |
| thick | spissus, a, urn | густой |
| thigh-bone | femur, ōris n | бедренная кость, бедро |
| thiosulphate | thiosulfas, ātis m | тиосульфат |
| third | tertius, a, | тринадцать |
| thirty | triginta | тридцать |
| thoracic | thoracicus, a, um | грудной |
| three | tres, tria | три |
| three times a day | ter in die | три раза в день |
| thumb | pollex, ĭcis m | большой палец кисти |
| thymus | thymus, i n | вилочковая железа |
| thyrohyoid | thyrohyoideus, a, um | щитоподъязычный |
| thyroid | thyreoideus, a, um | щитовидный |
| tibial | tibialis, e | большеберцовый |
| tincture | tinctūra, ae f | настойка |
| tip | apex, ĭcis m | верхушка, кончик |
| to, before, for, under | ad (c Acc.) | к, до, для, при |
| tongue | lingua, ae f | язык |
| tonic | tonicus, a, um | тонизирующий |
| tonics | tonica (remedia) n/pl | тонизирующие ле- карственные средства |
| tonsil | tonsilla, ae f | миндалина |
| tooth | dens, dentis m | зуб |
| toxic, poisonous | toxicus, a, um | токсический, ядовитый |
| trachea | trachea, ae f | трахея |
| tract | tractus, us m | путь, тракт |
| transfusion | transfusio, ōnis f | переливание |
| transverse | transversus, a, um | поперечный |
| trauma | trauma, ātis n | травма |
| tree | arbor, ōris f | дерево, древо |
| triangular | triangularis, e | треугольный |
| triceps (muscle) | triceps, cipĭtis | трёхглавый |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| tricuspid | tricuspidalis, e | трёхстворчатый |
| trigeminal (IV cranial nerve) | trigeminus, a, um | тройничный (нерв) |
| trochanter | trochanter, ēris m | вертел |
| trochanteric | trochantericus, a, um | вертельный |
| trochlea | trochlea, ae f | блок |
| trochlear | trochlearis, e | блоковый, относя- щийся к блоку |
| trophic | trophicus, a, um | трофический |
| trunk | truncus, i m | туловище |
| tube | tuba, ae f | труба |
| tuber | tuber, ěris n | бугор |
| tubercle | tuberculum, i n | бугорок |
| tuberosity | tuberositas, ātis f | бугристость |
| tuberous | tuberōsus, a, um | бугристый |
| tubule | tubulus, i m | трубочка |
| tumour | tumor, ōris m | опухоль |
| turn | verto, ěre III | поворачивать |
| turpentine | oleum Terebinthīnae | терпентинное масло, скипидар |
| twelfth | duodecimus, a, um | двенадцатый |
| twelve | duodecim | двенадцать |
| twenty | viginti | двадцать |
| twice | bis | дважды |
| twisted bowels | volvulus, i m | заворот кишок |
| two | duo, duae, duo | два |
| tympanic | tympanicus, a, um | барабанный |
| U | | |
| ulcer | ulcus, ěris n | язва |
| ulcerated | exulceratus, a, um | изъязвлённый, по- крытый язвами |
| ulcerative | ulcerosus, a, um | язвенный |
| ulnar | ulnaris, e | локтевой |
| under | sub (с Acc., Abl.) | под |

| | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| under «poison» label | sub signo veneni, s.s.v. | с обозначением (на этикетке) «яд!» сокр. в рецептах |
| upper arm | brachium, i n | плечо |
| upper jaw | maxilla, ae f | верхняя челюсть |
| ureter | urēter, ēris m | мочеточник |
| urethra | urethra, ae f | уретра, мочеиспус- кательный канал |
| urethral | urethralis, e | уретральный |
| urgently | citissime | срочно, очень быстро |
| urinary | urinarius, a, um | мочевой |
| urinary bladder | vesīca urinaria | мочевой пузырь |
| uterine | uterīnus, a, um | маточный |
| uterus, womb | utērus, i m | матка |
| uvula | lingula, ae f | язычок |
| V | | |
| vagina, sheath | vagīna, ae f | влагалище |
| vaginal | vaginalis, e | влагалищный |
| vagus nerve (Xth cranial nerve) | vagus, a, um | блуждающий (нерв) |
| valerian | Valeriāna, ae f | валериана |
| valve | valva, ae f | клапан (в целом) |
| valvule | valvula, ae f | заслонка, клапан |
| varicose | varicōsus, a, um | варикозный |
| varicosis | varices, m, f/pl | варикозное расширение вен |
| varix, varicose vein | varix, ĭcis m, f | варикозная вена |
| vascular | vascularis, e | сосудистый |
| vault | fornix, ĭcis m | свод |
| vehicle | constituens, ēntis | формирующий, формообразующий |
| vein | vena, ae f | вена |
| venousl | venōsus, a, um | венозный, венный |
| ventral | ventralis, e | вентральный |
| ventricle | ventriculus, i m | желудочек, желудок |

| | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| venicular | ventricularis, e | желудочковый |
| venule | venula, ae f | маленькая вена |
| vermiform | vermiformis, e | червеобразный |
| vermifuge | anthelminticus a, um | глистогонный |
| vertebra | vertebra, ae f | позвонок |
| vertebral | vertebralis, e | позвоночный |
| vesicle | vesicula, ae f | везикула, пузырек |
| vesicular | vesicularis, e | везикулярный |
| vesiculose | vesiculosus, a, um | везикулезный, пузырчатый |
| vessel | vas, vasis n | сосуд |
| vestibular | vestibularis, e | преддверный, вестибулярный |
| vestibule | atrium, i n, vestibulum, i n | преддверие |
| villus | villus, i m | ворсинка |
| violet | Viōla, ae f | фиалка |
| virus | virus, i n | яд, вирус |
| viscera | viscus, ěris n ; viscĕra, um n pl | внутренности, вну- тренние органы в брюшной полости |
| vitamin | vitamīnum, i n | витамин |
| vortex (of heart) | vortex, ĩcis m | завиток (сердца) |
| W | | |
| wall | paries, ětis m | стена, стенка |
| water | aqua, ae f | вода |
| way | via, ae f | путь |
| weak | asthenicus, a, um | астенический, слабый |
| wedge-shaped | cuneiformis, e | клиновидный |
| well | bene | хорошо |
| wheat | Triticum, i n | пшеница |
| white | albus, a, um | белый |
| wide | latus, a, um | широкий |
| widest | latissīmus, a, um | широчайший |

| | | |
|------------|--------------------|----------------|
| width | latitūdo, ōnis f | ширина |
| wild rose | Rosa, ae f | роза, шиповник |
| wing | ala, ae, f | крыло |
| with | cum (c Abl.) | с, вместе с; |
| within | intra (c Acc.) | внутри |
| wolfs bane | Arnīca, ae f | арника |
| woman | femīna, ae f | женщина |
| wound | vulnus, ōris n | рана |
| wrist | carpus, i m | запястье |
| wymote | Althaea, ae f | алтей |
| X | | |
| xeroform | Xeroformīum, i n | ксероформ |
| Y | | |
| year | annus, i m | год |
| Z | | |
| zygomatic | zygomatīcus, a, um | скуловой |

LATIN - ENGLISH - RUSSIAN GLOSSARY

| A | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| a, ab (с Abl.) | from | от |
| abdominalis, e | abdominal | брюшной |
| abducens, entis | abducting (VI cranial) nerve | отводящий (нерв) |
| abductor, ōris m | abductor (muscle) | отводящая (мышца) |
| abscessus, us m | boil | абсцесс, нарыв, гнойник |
| accessorius, a, um | accessory | добавочный |
| acetabulum, i n; | coryloid (cup-like) | вертлужная впадина |
| acetylsalicylicus, a, um | acetylsalicylic | ацетилсалициловый |
| acidum, i n | acid | кислота |
| acquisitus, a, um | acquired | приобретенный |
| acromialis, e | acromial | акромиальный |
| acromion, i n | acromion | акромион |
| activātus, a, um | activated | активированный |
| actus, us m | act | акт, действие |
| acusticus, a, um | acoustic | акустический, слуховой |
| acutus, a, um | acute | острый |
| ad (с Acc.) | to, before, for, under | к, до, для, при |
| ad lib. = ad libitum | at pleasure | (по желанию, сколько угодно, в любом количестве) |
| ad us. ext. = ad usum externum | for external use | для наружного употребления |
| ad us. int. = ad usum internum | for internal use | для внутреннего употребления |
| ad us. propr. = ad usum proprium | for the personal use of the physician | для личного (собственного) употребления |
| adductor, ōris m | adductor (muscle) | приводящая (мышца) |
| adipōsus, a, um | adipose, fatty | жирный, жировой |
| adītus, us m | entrance | вход |

| | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Adōnis, ĩdis m, f | lychnis | адонис, горлицвет |
| Adonisīdum, i n | adoniside | адонизид |
| Adrenalīnum, i, n | epinephrine | адреналин |
| adultus, a, um | adult | взрослый, совершеннолетний |
| aeger, gri m | patient | больной |
| aegrōtus, a, um | ill | больной |
| aequalis, e | equal | равный |
| aēr, aēris m | air | воздух |
| Aērōnum, i n | aeron | аэрон |
| aeternus, a, um | eternal | вечный |
| aether, ěris m | ether, ester | эфир |
| aethereus, a, um | ethereal | эфирный |
| aetas, ātis m | age | возраст |
| Aēvītum, i n | aevit | эвит |
| afferens, entis | afferent | афферентный (центро-стремительный), приносящий |
| ala, ae, f | wing | крыло |
| alaris, e | alar | крыльный |
| albumen, ĩnis n | albumin | белок |
| albus, a, um | white | белый |
| alcōhol, ōlis n, spirītus, us m | alcohol | алкоголь, спирт |
| alcoholicus, a, um | alcoholic | алкогольный |
| alimentarius, a, um | alimentary | алиментарный, пищевой |
| allergicus, a, um | allergic | аллергический |
| Aloë, ěs f | aloe | алоэ, сабур |
| alter, ěra, ěrum | another | другой |
| alternans, antis | alternate | чередующийся |
| Althaea, ae f | wymote | алтей |
| altus, a, um | tall | высокий |

| | | |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|
| alūmen, ĩnis n | alum (sg) | квасцы (алюминиево-калиевые) |
| alveolaris, e | alveolar | альвеолярный |
| amārus, a, um | bitter | горький |
| Amidochlorīdum, i n | amidochloride | амидохлорид |
| Amidopyrīnum, i n | amidopyrine | амидопирин |
| Aminazīnum, i n | aminazine | аминазин |
| ammoniātus, a, um | ammoniac | аммиачный |
| amnion, i n | amnion | амнион |
| amorphus, a, um | amorphous | аморфный |
| Ampicillīnum, i n | ampicillin | ампициллин |
| ampulla, ae f | ampoule | ампула |
| amputatio, ōnis f | amputation | ампутация |
| ana | equally | поровну, по |
| Anaesthesīnum, i n | anesthesin | анестезин |
| analīs, e | anal | анальный |
| analŷis, is f | analysis | анализ |
| anamnēsis, is f | case history | анамнез, воспоминание |
| anatomicus, a, um | anatomical | анатомический |
| aneurysma, ātis n | aneurysm | аневризма |
| angioneuroticus, a, um | angioneurotic | ангионевротический |
| angulus, i m | angle | угол |
| anīmal, ālis n | animal | животное |
| animalis, e | animal | животный |
| Anīsum, i n | anise | анис |
| ankylōsis, is f | ankylosis | анкилоз |
| annus, i m | year | год |
| ante (с Acc.) | before | до, раньше |
| ante cenam, ante cibos, ante cibum (a.c.) | before meals | перед едой |
| ante mortem | before death | перед смертью |
| anterior, ius | anterior, front | передний |
| anthelminthicus a, um | vermifuge | глистогонный |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| anthrax, ācis m | anthrax | сибирская язва |
| antiasthmaticus, a, um | antiasthmatic | противо- астматический |
| antibioticum, i n | antibiotic | антибиотик |
| antidōtum, i n | antidote | антидот, противоядие |
| antisepticus, a, um | antiseptic | антисептический |
| antrum, i n | antrum | пещера, полость |
| anulus, i m | ring | кольцо, ободок |
| anus, i m | anus | анус, задний проход |
| aorta, ae f | aorta | аорта |
| aorticus, a, um | aortic | аортальный |
| apertūra, ae f | aperture | апертура, отверстие |
| apertus, a, um | open | открытый |
| apex, ĩcis m | tip | верхушка, кончик |
| Apomorphĭnum, i n | apomorphine | апоморфин |
| aponeurōsis, is f | aponeurosis | апоневроз |
| appendix, ĩcis f | appendix | аппендикс, придаток |
| aqu(a)eductus, us m | aqueduct | водопровод |
| aqua, ae f | water | вода |
| ar(r)hythmia, ae f | arrhythmia | аритмия |
| arachnoidea, ae f | arachnoid membrane | паутинная мозговая оболочка |
| arbor, ōris f | tree | дерево, древо |
| arcuātus, a, um | arched | дугообразный |
| arcus, us m | arch | дуга |
| area, ae f | area | поле (кружок) |
| Arnĭca, ae f | wolfs bane | арника |
| arsenis, ĩtis m | arsenic | арсенит |
| arteria, ae f | artery | артерия |
| arteriōsus, a, um; arterialis, e | arterial | артериальный |
| articularis, e | articular | суставной |
| articulatio, ōnis f | joint | сустав |
| arytenoideus, a, um | arytenoids | черпаловидный |

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| ascendens, entis | ascending | восходящий |
| asper, ěra, ěrum | rough | шероховатый; суровый |
| asperitas, ātis, f | roughness | шероховатость |
| asthenicus, a, um | weak | астенический, слабый |
| asthma, ātis n | asthma (difficulty in breathing) | астма (удушьѐ) |
| asthmaticus, a, um | asthmatic | астматический |
| atheroscleroticus, a, um | atherosclerotic | атеросклеротический |
| atlas, āntis m | atlas, atlantes (pl) | атлант, шейный позвонок |
| atrium cordis | atrium (of the heart) | предсердие |
| atrium, i n, vestibulum, i n | vestibule | преддверие |
| Atropīnum, i n | atropine | атропин |
| auctor, ōris m | author | автор |
| audio, ĩre IV | listen | слушать |
| auditīvus, a, um | auditory, auditive | слуховой |
| audītus, us m | hearing | слух, способность слышать |
| aureus, a, um | gold(en) | золотой |
| auricula, ae f | auricle (of the ear) | ушная раковина, ушко |
| auricularis, e | auricular (relating to the ear or to the auricle of the heart) | ушной, ушковидный |
| auris, is f | ear | ухо |
| auscultatio, ōnis f | auscultation | аускультация, выслушивание |
| axillaris, e | axillary | подмышечный |
| axis, is m | axis | ось, II шейный позвонок |
| В | | |
| bacca, ae f | berry | ягода |
| Barbitālum, i n | barbital, barbitone | барбитал |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| basilaris, e | basilar | базиларный |
| basis, is f | base | основание, базис (основное средство в сложном рецепте) |
| Belladonna, ae f | great nightshade | белладонна, красавка |
| bene | well | хорошо |
| benignus, a, um | benign | доброкачественный |
| benzoas, ātis m | benzoate | бензоат |
| benzoicus, a, um | benzoic | бензойный |
| Benzylopenicillīnum, i n | benzylpenicillin | Benzylopenicillīnum, i n |
| biceps, cīpitis | biceps (muscle) | двуглавая мышца |
| bicuspidalis, e; | bicuspid | двустворчатый; |
| praemolaris, e | | малый коренной зуб, премоляр |
| bifurcātio, ōnis f | bifurcation | бифуркация, раздвоение |
| biliaris, e; felleus, a, um | biliary | билиарный; желчный |
| bilifer, ěra, ěrum | biliferous | желчный, желчеотводящий |
| biliōsus, a, um; choledōchus, a, um | bilious | желчный, желтушный; желчный |
| bini, ae, a | in twos | по два |
| bis | twice | дважды |
| bivalens, entis | bivalent | двухвалентный |
| biventer, tra, trum | digastric | двубрюшный (о мышце) |
| bolus, i f | kaolin | белая глина, каолит (силикат алюминия) |
| bonum, i n | good | добро |
| bonus, a, um | good | хороший |
| boricus, a, um | boric | борный |
| brachium, i n | upper arm | плечо |
| Bromcamphora, ae f | monobromated camphora | бромкамфора |

| | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| bromīdum, i n | bromide | бромид |
| bronchialis, e | bronchial | бронхиальный |
| bronchus, i m | bronchus | бронх |
| bucca, ae f | cheek | щека |
| buccalis, e | buccal; | щёчный |
| buccinātor, ōris m | cheek muscle | букцинатор, щёчная мышца |
| bulbus oculi | eyeball | глазное яблоко |
| bulbus, i m | bulb, bulbus | луковица (клубневидное утолщение) |
| bursa, ae f | pouch | сумка, мешок |
| С | | |
| c(a)ecus, a, um | blind | слепой |
| Cacao n | cocoa (powder) | какао |
| cadāver, ěris n | corpse | труп |
| caecum, i n | blind gut | слепая кишка |
| caesareus, a, um | cesarean | царский, кесарев |
| calāmus, i m | pen | перо (писчее) |
| calcaneus, a, um | calcaneal | пяточный |
| calcaneus, i m | heel bone | пяточная кость |
| calcar, āris n | calcar | шпора, напоминающий шпору отросток |
| calcificatio, ōnis f | calcification | кальцификация |
| calculōsus, a, um | calculous | калькулезный |
| calculus, i m | stone | камень |
| calor, ōris m | heat | теплота, жар |
| calx, calcis f | heel | пята, пятка |
| calyx, ūcis m | cup | чашка, чашечка |
| camera, ae f | chamber | камера, полость |
| Camphōra, ae f | camphor | камфора |
| canalis, is m | channel | канал, проход, проток |
| cancer, cri m | cancer | канцер, рак |
| canīnus, a, um (dens) | canine, caninus | собачий, клыковый (зуб); клык |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| capillaris, e | capillary | капиллярный |
| capitūlum, i n | capitulum | головка |
| capsūla, ae f | capsula | капсула |
| caput, ūtis n | head | голова, головка |
| carbo, ōnis m | charcoal | уголь |
| carbōnas, ātis m | carbonate | карбонат |
| carcinōma, ātis n | carcinoma | раковая опухоль, рак |
| carcinomatōsus, a, um | cancerous | карциноматозный, раковый |
| cardiācus, a, um | cardiac | сердечный |
| Cardiovalēnum, i n | cardiovalen | кардиовален |
| carīes, ēi f | caries | кариес, костоеда |
| caroticus, a, um | carotid | сонный |
| carōtis, tīdis (arteria) f | carotid artery | сонная артерия |
| carpēus, a, um | carpal | запястный |
| carpus, i m | wrist | запястье |
| cartilagīneus, a, um | cartilaginous | хрящевой |
| cataracta, ae f | cataract | катаракта |
| catarrhalis, e | catarrhal | катаральный |
| causalis, e | causal | причинный |
| caute | carefully | осторожно |
| caverna, ae f | cave | полость, пещера, каверна |
| cavernōsus, a, um | cavernous | пещеристый |
| cavitas, ātis f; cavum, i n | cavity, cistern | полость, впадина |
| cavus, a, um | hollow | полюй, пустой, впалый |
| celer, ěris, ěre | quick | быстрый |
| celeriter | quickly | быстро |
| cellula, ae f | cell | клетка, ячейка |
| cellularis, e | cellular | клеточный |
| cementum, i n | cement (dental) | цемент (зубной) |
| centralis, e | central | центральный |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| cerebellaris, e | cerebellar | мозжечковый |
| cerebellum, i n | cerebellum | мозжечок |
| cerebralis, e | cerebral | мозговой, церебральный |
| cerebrospinalis, e | cerebrospinal | спинномозговой |
| cerebrum, i n | cerebrum, brain, encephalon | большой мозг |
| cervicalis, e | cervical | шейный |
| cervicobrachialis, e | cervicobrachial | шейно-плечевой |
| cervix, icis f | neck | шея, шейка |
| Chamomilla, ae f | chamomile | ромашка |
| chiasma, ātis n; (decussatio, ōnis f) | decussation | перекрест |
| Chinīnum, i n | quinine | хинин |
| Chinosōlum, i n | chinosol | хинозол |
| chirurgia, ae f | surgery | хирургия |
| chloridum, i n | chloride | хлорид |
| Chloroformium, i n | chloroform | хлороформ |
| Chlorophylliptum, i n | chlorophyllipt | хлорофиллипт |
| chole, es f; fel, fellis n | bile | желчь |
| chondrocŷtus, i m | chondrocyte | хондроцит |
| chorda, ae f | cord | хорда, нить, струна |
| chronicus, a, um | chronic | хронический |
| cibus, i m | food | еда, пища |
| cicatrix, icis f | scar | рубец, шрам |
| ciliaris, e | ciliary | ресничный |
| cinereus, a, um | grey | серый |
| cingulum, i n | girdle | пояс |
| circularis, e | circular | круговой, циркулярный |
| circulus, i m | circle | круг |
| circumflēxus, a, um | circumflex | огibaющий |
| cirrhōsis, is f | cirrhosis | цирроз |
| cisterna, ae f | cistern | цистерна |

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| citissime | urgently | срочно, очень быстро |
| cito | quickly | быстро |
| citras, ātis m | citrate | цитрат |
| clavicūla, ae f | collar-bone | ключица |
| clavicularis, e | clavicular | ключичный |
| coccygēus, a, um | coccygeal | копчиковый |
| coccyx, ygis m | coccyx | копчик |
| cochlea, ae f | cochlea | улитка (внутреннего уха) |
| cochlearis, e | cochlear | улиточный, относя- щийся к улитке |
| cocntrātus, a, um | concentrated | концентрированный |
| Codeinum, i n | codeine | кодеин |
| Coffeīnum(i)-natrii ben- zoas, ātis m | benzoate sodium | кофеин-бензоат натрия |
| Coffeīnum, i n | caffeine | кофеин |
| Collargōlum, i n | collargole | колларгол |
| collateralis, e | collateral | коллатеральный |
| collum, i n | neck | шея, шейка |
| colon, i n | colon | ободочная кишка |
| color, ōris m | colour | цвет, окраска |
| columna, ae f | column | колонна, столб |
| coma, ātis n | coma, loss of consciousness | кома, полная потеря сознания |
| comitans, antis | accompanying | сопутствующий, сопровождающий |
| commissūra, ae f | commissure | спайка |
| commotio, ōnis f | concussion | сотрясение |
| communicans, antis | communicant | соединяющий |
| communis, e | common | общий |
| complicātus, a, um | complicated | осложнённый |
| composītus, a, um | complex | сложный, суставной |
| concha, ae f | concha | раковина |
| concrementum, i n | concrement | конкремент |
| condylaris, e | condylar | мышцелковый |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| condylus, i m | condyle | мыщелок |
| congestivus, a, um | congestive | застойный |
| conicus, a, um | cone-shaped | конусовидный, конический |
| conjunctivus, a, um | connecting | соединительный, соединительнотканый |
| constituens, entis | vehicle | формирующий, формообразующий |
| constrictor, oris m | constrictor | констриктор (мышца) |
| contra (c Acc.) | against | против, вопреки |
| contractura, ae f | contraction | контрактура, сведение (непроизвольное спастическое сокращение мышц) |
| Convallaria, ae f | lily of the valley | ландыш |
| cor, cordis n | heart | сердце |
| Corazolum, i n | pentylerytetrazol | коразол |
| cornea, ae f | cornea | роговица |
| cornealis, e | corneal | роговой |
| cornu, us n | horn | рог, рожок |
| corona, ae f | crown | коронка |
| coronarius, a, um | coronary | венечный |
| corpus, oris n | body | тело; организм |
| corrigen, entis | corrigent | исправляющий корригенс |
| corrugator, oris m | corrugator (muscle) | сморщивающая (мышца) |
| cortex, icis m | cortex | кора, корковое вещество |
| corticalis, e | cortical | корковый |
| costa, ae f | rib | ребро |
| costalis, e; costarius, a, um | costal | рёберный |
| coxa, ae f | hip-bone; hip-joint | таз, бедро; тазобедренный сустав |

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| cranialis, e | cranial | черепной, краниальный |
| Crataegus, i f | hawthorn | боярышник |
| cremāster, ēris m | cremaster (muscle) | кремастер; мышца, поднимающая яичко |
| cribrōsus, a, um | cribriform | решётчатый |
| cricoesophageus, a, um | cricoesophageal | перстнепищеводный |
| cricoideus, a, um | cricoid | перстневидный |
| crista, ae f; pecten, īnis n | crest | гребень, гребешок |
| croupōsus, a, um | croupous (cruposus) | крупозный |
| cruciātus, a, um | cross-shaped | скрещенный |
| cruciformis, e | cruciform | крестообразный |
| crus, cruris n | crus | голень, ножка |
| crystallisātus, a, um | crystalline | кристаллический |
| cuboideus, a, um | cuboidal, cubical | кубовидный, кубический |
| cum (c Abl.) | with | с, вместе с; |
| cuneiformis, e | wedge-shaped | клиновидный |
| cura, ae f | cure | лечение |
| curvatūra, ae f | curve | кривизна |
| cuspis, īdis f | cusps | острие, створка |
| cutaneus, a, um | cutaneous | кожный |
| cuticula, ae f | cuticle | кутикула, кожица |
| cyanīdum, i n | cyanide | цианид |
| cysta, ae f | cyst | киста |
| cystōsus, a, um | cystic | пузырный, относящийся к мочевому или желчному пузырю |
| cystōsus, a, um | cystous | кистозный |
| D | | |
| D.= da, detur, dentur | give out | дай, выдай, пусть будет дано (сокр. в рецептах) |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| decem | ten | десять |
| deciduus (dens) | milk, baby, deciduous, first, primary, temporary | отпадающий, молочный (о зубе) |
| decoctum, i n | decoction | отвар |
| decubitus, us m | bed-sore | пролежень |
| deformans, antis | deforming | деформирующий, обезображивающий |
| deltoideus, a, um | deltoid | дельтовидный |
| dens, dentis m | tooth | зуб |
| dentalis, e | dental | зубной |
| dentinum, i n | dentine | дентин |
| depressor, oris m | depressor (muscle) | опускатель (мышца) |
| depuratus, a, um | depurated | очищенный |
| descendens, entis | descending | нисходящий |
| destillatus, a, um | distilled | дистиллированный |
| dexter, tra, trum | right | правый |
| diabetes, ae m | diabetes | диабет |
| diabeticus, a, um | diabetic | диабетический |
| Diaethylstilboeströlum, i n | diethylstilbestrol, estrostiben | диэтилстилбэстрол |
| diagnösis, is f | diagnosis | диагноз |
| diamēter, i f | diameter | диаметр, поперечник |
| diaphragma, ätis n | diaphragm | диафрагма |
| diarrhoea, ae f | diarrhea | понос |
| Dibazölum, i n | dibazol | дибазол |
| Dichlothiazidum, i n | hydrochlorothiazide dichlothiazide | дихлотиазид |
| differentia, ae f | distinction | различие |
| diffusus, a, um | diffuse | диффузный, разлитой |
| digastricus, a, um | biventral | двубрюшный |
| digitalis, e | digital | пальцевой |
| digitatus, a, um | finger-shaped | пальцевидный |
| digitus, i m | finger, toe | палец |

| | | |
|--|----------------------------|---|
| dilatatio, ōnis f; (ectasia, ae f) | dilatation | дилатация, расширение, эктазия |
| dilatator, ōris m (musculus) | m. dilator | расширяющая мышца |
| dilūtus, a, um | diluted | разбавленный |
| discus, i m | disk | диск |
| disseminātus, a, um | disseminated | диссеминированный, рассеянный |
| distalis, e | distal | дистальный |
| div. in p. aeq(u). = divide in partes aequales | divide into equal parts | раздели на равные части (сокр. в рецептах) |
| diverticulum, i n | diverticulum | дивертикул, выпячивание |
| do, dāre I | give | давать, выдавать |
| doctor, ōris m | teacher | учитель |
| dolor, ōris m | pain | боль |
| domesticus, a, um | domestic | домашний |
| dorsalis, e | dorsal | спинной, тыльный, дорсальный |
| dorsum, i n | back | спина, тыл |
| dosis curativa | curative dose | лечебная доза, терапевтическая доза |
| dosis letalis | lethal dose | летальная доза, смертельная доза (доза лекарства и др., могущая вызвать смерть) |
| dosis letalis minīma | minimum lethal dose | минимальная смертельная (летальная) доза |
| dosis maxīma | maximum dose | максимальная доза, которую может принять человек без опасности для здоровья |

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| dosis refracta | broken dose, divided dose, fractional dose | дробная доза, уменьшенная, назначается многократно через краткие промежутки времени |
| dosis, is f | dose | доза |
| dragee | dragee | драже |
| ductulus, i m | ductile | проточек |
| ductus, us m | duct | проток |
| dulcis, e | sweet | сладкий |
| duo, duae, duo | two | два |
| duodecim | twelve | двенадцать |
| duodecimus, a, um | twelfth | двенадцатый |
| duodenalis, e | duodenal | дуоденальный, двенадцатиперстный |
| duodenum, i n | duodenum | двенадцатиперстная кишка |
| duplex, icis | duplex, double | двойной, сдвоенный |
| dura mater | dura mater | твёрдая мозговая оболочка |
| durus, a, um | hard | твёрдый |
| dyspnoë, ës f (dyspnoea) | dyspnea, shortness of breath | диспноэ/отдышка |
| Е | | |
| eczëma, ätis n | eczema | экзема |
| efferens, entis | efferent | эфферентный, выносящий, |
| ego | I | я |
| eminens, entis | bulging | выдающийся, выступающий |
| eminentia, ae f | eminence | возвышение |
| emphysëma, ätis m | emphysema | эмфизема, увеличение количества воздуха в органах |
| emplastrum, i n | plaster | пластырь |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| emulsum, i n; emulsio, ōnis f | emulsion | эмульсия |
| enamēlum, i n | enamel | эмаль |
| encephālon, i n | brain | головной мозг |
| endemicus, a, um | endemic | эндемический, свой- ственный данной об- ласти, местный |
| epidemicus, a, um | epidemic | эпидемический |
| epigastricus, a, um | epigastric | надчревный |
| epiglottis, īdis f | epiglottis | надгортанник |
| epiphysialis, e | epiphysial | эпифизарный |
| epiphysis, is f | epiphysis | эпифиз |
| epithelialis, e | epithelial | эпителиальный |
| erector, oris m | erector (muscle) | выпрямитель (мышца) |
| esophageus, a, um | esophageal | пищеводный |
| et | and | и |
| ethmoidalis, e | ethmoid | решетчатый |
| Eucalyptus, i f | gum-tree | эвкалипт |
| extirpatio, ōnis f | extirpation | экстирпация, искоренение |
| extensio, ōnis f | extension | разгибание, растягивание |
| extensor, ōris m | extensor (muscle) | разгибатель (мышца) |
| extensus, a, um | extended | вытянутый |
| externus, a, um | external | наружный |
| extractio, ōnis f | extraction | извлечение |
| extractum, i n | extract | экстракт (вытяжка) |
| extrauterīnus, a, um | extrauterine | внематочный |
| extremītas, ātis f | extremity | конец |
| exulceratus, a, um | ulcerated | изъязвлённый, покрытый язвами |

| F | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| f., F. = fiat, fiant | let there be made; so that there is | пусть будет сделано, пусть будут сделаны (сделай, приготовь!) сокр. в рецептах |
| facialis, e | facial | лицевой, поверхностный |
| facies, ēi f | surface | лицо, поверхность |
| Farfāra, ae f | coltsfoot | мать-и-мачеха |
| fascia, ae f | fascia | фасция |
| fasciculus, i m | fascicle | пучок |
| fauces, ium f (pl) | fauces | зев |
| febrillis, e | feverish | лихорадочный |
| febris, is f | fever | лихорадка |
| femīna, ae f | woman | женщина |
| femininus, a, um | feminine | женский |
| femur, ōris n | thigh-bone | бедренная кость, бедро |
| fetus, us m, foetus, us m | fetus, f(o)etus | плод (утробный, от 9-й недели до рождения) |
| fibra, ae f | fibre | волокно |
| fibrosus, a, um | fibrous | фиброзный, волокнистый |
| fibularis, e | peroneal | малоберцовый |
| finio, ĩre IV | finish | оканчивать, заканчивать, кончать |
| fissura, ae f | fissure | щель |
| flexio, ōnis f | flexion | сгибание |
| flexor, ōris m | flexor(muscle) | сгибатель (мышца) |
| flexura, ae f | flexure | изгиб |
| flos, floris m | flower | цветок; цветущее состояние |
| fluidus, a, um | fluid | жидкий |
| folium, i n | leaf | лист, листок |

| | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| folliculus, i m | follicle | фолликул, пузырёк |
| fonticulus, i m | fontanelle | родничок |
| forāmen, ĩnis n | opening | отверстие |
| forma, ae f | form | форма |
| fornix, ĩcis m | vault | свод |
| fossa, ae f | hollow | ямка, яма |
| fovea, ae f | depression | ямка, углубление |
| foveola, ae f | minute fovea, minute pit | ямочка |
| fractūra, ae f | fracture | перелом |
| Frangūla, ae f | buckthorn | крушина |
| frenulum, i n | frenulum | уздечка |
| frequens, entis | frequent | частый, учащенный |
| frons, frontis f | forehead | лоб |
| frontalis, e | frontal | лобный |
| fructus, us m | fruit | плод (раст.) |
| functio, ōnis f | function | действие, функция; исполнение; обязан- ность |
| fundus, i m | bottom | дно |
| fungiformis, e | fungoid | грибовидный |
| fusiformis, e | fusiform, spindle- shaped | веретеновидный, ве- ретенообразный |
| G | | |
| ganglion, i n | ganglion | ганглий (нервный узел) |
| gastricus, a, um | gastric | желудочный |
| gastroduodenalis, e | gastroduodenal | желудочно-двенадца- типерстно-кишечный |
| generalis, e | generad | генеральный, общий |
| geniohyoideus, a, um | geniohyoid | подбородочно- подъязычный |
| genitalis, e | genital | половой, гениталь- ный |
| genu, us n | knee | колени |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| gigantocellularis, e | giant-cell (attr.) | гигантоклеточный |
| gingīva, ae f | gum | десна |
| gingivalis, e | gingival | десневой |
| glandula, ae f | gland | железа |
| glaucōma, ātis n | glaucoma | глаукома |
| globulus, i n | globule, small pill, cotton pellet | шарик |
| glomus, ěris n | glomus, glome | клубок, гломус (сосу- дистый) |
| glossopharyngeus, a, um (nervus) | glossopharyngeal nerve, 9th cranial nerve | языкоглоточный |
| glottis, īdis f | glottis | голосовая щель, соб- ственно голосовой аппарат |
| glucōnas, ātis m | gluconate | глюконат |
| Glucōsum, i n | glucose | глюкоза |
| gluteus, a, um | gluteal | ягодичный |
| glycerophōsphas, ātis m | glycerophosphate | глицерофосфат |
| gramma, ātis n | gram, gramme | грамм |
| granulum, i n | granule | гранула, крупинка |
| gutta, ae f | drop | капля |
| gyrus, i m | convolution | извилина |
| Н | | |
| habitus, us m | appearance | внешность, наружность |
| hallux, ūcis m | big toe | большой палец стопы |
| hamatus, a, um | hook-shaped | крючковидный |
| hamulus, i m | hooklet | крючок (крючковид- ный отросток) |
| Helianthus, i m | sunflower | подсолнечник |
| hemispherium, i n | hemisphere | полушарие |
| hepar, ātis n | liver | печень |
| hepaticus, a, um | hepatic | печёночный |
| herba, ae f | herb | лекарственная трава |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| hernia, ae f | hernia | грыжа |
| hernialis, e | hernial | грыжевой |
| heroicus, a, um | powerful | сильнодействующий |
| herpes, ětis m | herpes | герпес, пузырьковый лишай |
| hiātus, us m | gap | щель, расщелина |
| hilus, i m | hilus | ворота |
| hippocampus, i m | hippocamp(us) | гиппокамп |
| hippocraticus, a, um | Hippocratic | Гиппократов |
| Hippophaë, ěs f | sea buckthorn | облепиха |
| hirūdo, ĩnis f | leech | пиявка |
| Homatropīnum, i n | homatropine | гоматропин |
| homo, ĩnis m | man | человек |
| honor, ōris m | honour | честь, почесть |
| horizontalis, e | horizontal | горизонтальный |
| humeralis, e | humeral | плечевой |
| humor, ōris m | body-fluid | влага |
| hydrobromīdum, i n | hydrobromide | гидробромид |
| hydrocarbōnas, ātis m | hydrogen carbonate | гидрокарбонат |
| Hydrochlorīdum, i n, | hydrochloride | гидрохлорид |
| Hydrogenium, i n | hydrogen | водород |
| hydroiodīdum, i n | hydroiodide | гидроиодид |
| hydrotārtras, ātis m | hydrotartrate | гидротартрат |
| hydroxŷdum, i n | hydroxide | гидроксид |
| hyoideus, a, um | hyoid | подъязычный (кость) |
| hypogastricus, a, um | hypogastric | подчервный |
| hypoglossus, a, um | hypoglossal | подъязычный (нерв) |
| hypophŷsis, is f | hypophysis | гипофиз |
| I | | |
| Ichthyōlum, i n | ichthammol | ихтиол |
| icterus, i m | jaundice | желтуха |
| ile, ilis n; ilia, ilium pl | iliac region | подвздошная область |
| ileus, i m | bowel (intestinal), obstruction | непроходимость кишечника |

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| iliācus, a, um | iliac | подвздошный |
| iliohypogastricus, a, um | iliohypogastric | подвздошно-подчревный |
| impressio, ōnis f | impression | вдавление |
| in | in | в, на (с Acc. на вопрос куда?; с Abl. на вопрос где?) |
| in die, de die | daily | ежедневно |
| incisio, ōnis f | incision | надрез, насечка |
| incisīvus, a, um | incisor (adj.) | резцовый |
| incisūra, ae f | incisure | вырезка |
| index, ĩcis m | forefinger | указатель, указательный палец |
| infans, ntis m, f | child | ребёнок |
| inferior, ius | lower | нижний |
| inflammatio, ōnis f | inflammation | воспаление |
| inflammatorius, a, um | inflammatory | воспалительный |
| infraclavicularis, e | infraclavicular | подключичный |
| infrahyoideus, a, um | infrahyoid | подподъязычный |
| infracjugularis, e | infracjugular | подъязырный |
| infraorbitalis, e | infraorbital | подглазничный |
| infundibulum, i n | funnel | воронка |
| infusum, i n | infusion | настой |
| inguen, ĩnis n | groin | пах |
| inguinalis, e | inguinal | паховый |
| injectio, ōnis f | injection | инъекция |
| insanabilis, e | incurable | неизлечимый |
| insufficiētia, ae f | insufficiency | недостаточность |
| integer, gra, grum | intact | неповрежденный |
| intercostalis, e | intercostal | межреберный |
| interlobularis, e | interlobular | междольковый |
| intermedius, a, um | intermediary | средний, промежуточный |

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| intermittens, ends | intermittent | перемежающийся, прерывистый |
| intermuscularis, e | intermuscular | межмышечный |
| internus, a, um | internal | внутренний |
| interosseus, a, um | interosseous | межкостный |
| interstitialis, e | interstitial | промежуточный |
| intervertebralis, e | intervertebral | межпозвоночный |
| intestinalis, e | intestinal | кишечный |
| intestinum crassum | large intestine | толстая кишка |
| intestīnum, i | intestine | кишка |
| intra (с Acc.) | within | внутри |
| intraarticularis, e | intra-articular | внутрисуставной |
| intramuscularis, e | intramuscular | внутримышечный |
| inversus, a, um | inverted | перевернутый, извращенный |
| iodīdum, i n | iodide | йодид |
| iris, īdis f | iris | радужка, радужная оболочка |
| ischiadicus, a, um | ischadic | седалищный |
| ischium, i n | ischium | седалище |
| isotonicus, a, um | isotonic | изотонический |
| isthmus, i n | isthmus | перешеек |
| jejunalis, e | jejunal | относящийся к тощей кишке |
| jejunum, i n | jejunum | тощая кишка |
| jugularis, e | jugular | ярёмный |
| jugum, i n | ridge | возвышение |
| junctūra, ae f | juncture | соединение |
| Junipērus, i f | juniper | можжевельник |
| juvenilis, e | juvenile | юношеский, молодой |
| L | | |
| labium, i n | lip | губа |
| labyrinthus, i m | labyrinth | лабиринт, внутреннее ухо |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| lac, lactis n | milk | молоко |
| lacrīma, ae f | tear | слеза |
| lacrimalis, e | lacrimal | слёзный |
| lactas, ātis m | lactate | лактат |
| laesus, a, um | damaged | поврежденный |
| lamella, ae f | plate | пластинка |
| lamīna, ae f | plate | пластинка |
| larynx, ýngis m | larynx | гортань |
| lateralis, e | lateral | боковой |
| Latīnus, a, um | Latin | латинский |
| latissīmus, a, um | widest | широчайший |
| latitūdo, ĩnis f | width | ширина |
| latus, a, um | wide | широкий |
| laxans, antis | laxative | слабительный |
| lens, lentis f | lens | хрусталик |
| Leonūrus, i m | motherwort | пустырник |
| letalis, e | lethal, fatal, mortal | смертельный |
| levator, ōris m | levator | подниматель, подни- мающая мышца |
| ligamentum, i n | ligament | связка |
| linea, ae f | line | линия, черта |
| līngua, ae f | tongue | язык |
| lingualis, e | lingual | язычный |
| lingula, ae f | uvula | язычок |
| linimentum, i n | liniment | линимент |
| Linum, i n | flax | лен |
| liquor Ammonii anisatus (i) | liquid ammonia anise dripped | нашатырно-анисовые капли |
| liquor, oris m | fluid | жидкость, раствор |
| lobaris, e | lobar | долевой |
| lobulus, i m | lobe | долька |
| localis, e | local | местный |
| locus, i m | place, spot | место |
| longitudinalis, e | longitudinal | продольный |

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| longus, a, um | long | длинный |
| lumbalis, e | lumbar | поясничный |
| lumbosacralis, e | lumbosacral | пояснично-крестцовый |
| lumbus, i m | loin | поясница |
| lymphaticus, a, um | lymphatic | лимфатический |
| М | | |
| M. = Misce! | Mix! | Смешай! |
| magnus, a, um | great, large | большой, больший |
| major, jus | greater | большой |
| malignus, a, um | malignant | злокачественный |
| malus, a, um | bad | плохой, худой |
| mamma, ae f | breast | молочная железа, грудь |
| mandibula, ae f | lower jaw | нижняя челюсть |
| mandibularis e | mandibular | нижнечелюстной |
| manubrium, i n | presternum | рукоятка |
| manus, us f | hand | кисть руки, рука |
| margo, ĩnis m | border | край, граница |
| masculus, a, um | masculine | мужской |
| massĕter, ĕris m | masseter (muscle) | жевательная мышца |
| masticatorius, a, um | chewing | жевательный |
| mastoideus, a, um | mastoid | сосцевидный |
| mater, tris f | mother, mater | мать, мозговая оболочка |
| matrix, ĩcis f | matrix | ложе, основание |
| maxilla, ae f | upper jaw | верхняя челюсть |
| maxillaris, e | maxillary | верхнечелюстной |
| maxĭmus, a, um | greatest | наибольший, большой |
| meĕtus, us m | passage | проход, ход |
| medialis, e | medial | средний, медиальный |
| mediĕnus, a, um | median | срединный |
| mediastinalis, e | mediastinal | средостенный |

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| mediastinum, i n | mediastinum | средостение |
| medicamentum, i n; pharmacōn, i n | drug | лекарство |
| medicīna, ae f | medicine | медицина |
| medicinalis, e | medicinal | лекарственный |
| medicus, i m | physician | врач |
| medius, a, um | middle | средний |
| medulla oblongāta | rachidian bulb | продолговатый мозг |
| medulla ossium | bone marrow | костный мозг |
| medulla spinalis | spinal cord/marrow | спинной мозг |
| medulla, ae f | marrow | мозговое вещество |
| mel, mellis n | honey | мёд |
| membrāna, ae f | membrane | мембрана, перепонка |
| membranaceus, a. um | membranaceous | перепончатый |
| membranula, ae f | film | плёнка |
| membrum, i n | limb | конечность, член |
| memoria, ae f | memory | память |
| meninx, ngis f | coat of brain | мозговая оболочка |
| mens, mentis f | mind, intellect | ум |
| mentalis, e | mental | подбородочный |
| Mentha, ae f | mint | мята |
| Menthōlum, i n | menthol | ментол |
| mentum, i n | chin | подбородок |
| metacarpus, i m | metacarpus | пясть |
| metastāsis, is f | metastasis | метастаз |
| metastaticus, a, um | metastatic | метастатический |
| Methylēnum coeruleum | methylene blue | метиленовый синий |
| Methylī salicylas (ātis), m | methyl salicylate | метилсалицилат |
| Methyloestradiolum, i n | methylestradiol | метилэстрадиол |
| Millefolium, i n | milfoil | тысячелистник |
| minor, minus | lesser | малый, меньший |
| misceo, ēre II | mix | мешать, смешивать |

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mitralis, e | mitral | митральный, двустворчатый |
| mixtura, ae f | mixture | микстура |
| mixtus, a, um | mixed | смешанный |
| mobīlis, e | movable | подвижный, блуждающий |
| molaris, e | molar (attr.) | большой коренной (зуб), моляр |
| morbus, i m | disease, malady, illness, sickness | болезнь, заболевание |
| mors, mortis f | death | смерть |
| mortuus, a, um | dead | мёртвый, умерший |
| motorius, a, um | motor (attr.) | моторный, двигательный |
| mucilāgo, īis f | mucilage | слизь (лек. ф.) |
| mucōsus, a, um | mucous | слизистый |
| mucus, i m | mucus | слизь |
| muscularis, e | muscular | мышечный |
| musculus, i m | muscle | мышца |
| mylohyoideus, a, um | mylohyoid | челюстно-подъязычный |
| myocardium, i n | myocardium | миокард |
| N | | |
| Naphthalānum, i n | naphthalan | нафталан |
| narcōsis, is f | anesthesia | наркоз |
| naris, is f | nostril | ноздря |
| nasalis, e | nasal | носовой |
| nasociliaris, e | naasociliary | носоресничный |
| nasolacrimalis, e | nasolacrimal | носослезный |
| nasus, i m | nose | нос |
| natalis, e | natal | относящийся к рождению, родной |
| natus, a, um | born | рожденный |

| | | |
|---|---------------|---|
| ne repetatur, ne repet. (сокр. в рецептах) | do not repeat | не повторять, т.е. не готовить повторно предписанное в рецепте и уже один раз приготовленное лекарство; |
| necrōsis, is f | necrosis | некроз, омертвление |
| necroticus, a, um | necrotic | омертвелый, |
| neoplasma, atis n | newgrowth | новообразование, опухоль |
| nervōsus, a, um | nervous | нервный |
| nervus, i m | nerve | нерв |
| neuter, tra, trum | neuter | средний (род) |
| niger, gra, grum | black | чёрный, тёмный |
| nitens, entis | brilliant | блестящий |
| nitras, ātis m | nitrate | нитрат |
| nitris, itīs m | nitrite | нитрит |
| Nitrogenium, i n | nitrogen | азот |
| nodulus, i m | nodule | узелок |
| nodus, i m | node | узел |
| nomen, ĩnis n | name | название, имя |
| non | not | не |
| nonus, a, um | ninth | девятый |
| notus, a, um | known | известный |
| novem | nine | девять |
| nucha, ae f | nape | выя |
| nuclearis, e | nuclear | ядерный |
| nucleus, i m | nucleus | ядро |
| numĕrus, i m | number | число |
| nutricius, a, um | nutritious | питательный |
| nutriens, entis | nutrient | относящийся к питанию, доставляющий пищу, питающий |
| nux, nucis f | nut | орех |

| O | | |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| obductus, a, um | coated | покрытый оболочкой |
| oblata, ae f | cachet | капсула, облатка |
| obliquus, a, um | oblique | косой, наклонный |
| oblongātus, a, um | oblong | продолговатый |
| occipitalis, e | occipital | затылочный |
| occipitofrontalis, e | occipitofrontal | затылочно-лобный |
| occipitotemporalis, e | occipitotemporal | затылочно-височный |
| occiput, itis n | occiput | затылок |
| octavus, a, um | eighth | восьмой |
| octo | eight | восемь |
| Octoestrōlum, i n | octestrol | октэстрол |
| ocularis, e | ocular | окулярный, глазной |
| oculomotorius, a, um | oculomotor(ius) | глазодвигательный |
| oculus, i m | eye | глаз |
| oedema, ātis n | edema | отёк |
| oedematōsus, a, um | edematous | эдематозный, отечный |
| oesophāgus, i m | esophagus, gullet | пищевод |
| officīna, ae f | drugstore | мастерская, аптека |
| olecrānon, i n | elbow process | локтевой отросток |
| oleosus, a, um | oily | масляный |
| oleum aethereum | essential oil | эфирное масло |
| oleum Helianthi | sunflower oil | подсолнечное масло |
| oleum Morruae = oleum jecoris Aselli | cod-liver-oil | рыбий жир |
| oleum Olivārum | olive oil | оливковое масло |
| oleum Paraffini = oleum Vaselini | liquid paraffin | вазелиновое масло |
| oleum Persicōrum | peach oil | персиковое масло |
| oleum Ricīni | castor oil | касторовое масло |
| oleum Terebinthīnae | turpentine | терпентинное масло, скипидар |

| | | |
|--|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| oleum Vaselini seu Paraffinum liquidum | liquid paraffin | вазелиновое масло, жидкий парафин |
| oleum, i n | oil | масло |
| olfactorius, a, um | olfactory | обонятельный |
| Olīva, ae f | olive | олива (плод) |
| omentum, i n | omentum | сальник |
| omni bihora (omn. bih.) | every two hours | каждые два часа |
| omni hora (omn. hor.) | every hour | каждый час |
| omohyoideus, a, um | scapulohypoglossal | лопаточно-подъязычный |
| ophthalmica (remedia), n/pl | ophthalmic remedies | глазные лекарственные средства |
| ophthalmicus, a, um | ophthalmic | глазной |
| opticus. a, um | optic | зрительный, оптический |
| optimus, a, um | best | наилучший |
| oralis, e | oral | ротовой |
| orbicularis, e | orbicular | орбикулярный, круговой, кольцевой |
| orbīta, ae f | eye socket | глазница |
| orbitalis, e | orbital | глазничный |
| organismus, i m | organism | организм |
| orgānum, i n | organ | орган |
| orōtas, ātis m | orotate | оротат |
| orthodontia, ae f | orthodontics | ортодонтия |
| os, oris n | mouth | рот |
| os, ossis n | bone | кость |
| osseus, a, um | bony | костный |
| ostium, i n | mouth | отверстие, устье |
| ovalis, e | oval | овальный |
| ovarium, i n | ovary | яичник |
| ovum, i n | egg cell | яйцо, яйцеклетка |
| oxȳdum, i n | oxide | оксид |

| P | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|---|
| p.aeq. = partes aequales | in equal parts | в равных частях, равными частями сокр. в рецептах) |
| palatīnus, a, um | palatine, palatal | нёбный |
| palatoglossus, a, um | palatoglossal | нёбно-язычный |
| palātum, i n | palate | небо |
| palmaris, e | palmar | ладонный |
| palpebra, ae f | eyelid | веко |
| pancreas, ātis n | pancreas | поджелудочная железа |
| papilla, ae f | nipple, papilla | сосок, сосочек |
| papillaris, e | papillary | папиллярный, сосочковый |
| paralysis, is f | paralysis | паралич |
| paramnesia, ae f | false recollection | парамнезия, псевдо-воспоминания |
| parasacralis, e | parasacral | парасакральный, околокрестцовый, расположенный около крестцовой кости |
| parasternalis, e | parasternal | окологрудинный |
| parathyroideus, a, um | parathyroid(al) | околощитовидный |
| parenchyma, ātis n | parenchyma | паренхима |
| parēsis, is f | partial paralysis | парез |
| paries, ētis m | wall | стена, стенка |
| parietalis, e | parietal | теменной, пристеночный |
| parietooccipitalis, e | parietooccipital | теменно-затылочный |
| parodontium, i n parodontium, i n | periodontium | пародонт |
| paroticus, a, um | parotic | паратидный, околоушный |
| parōtis, otīdis f | parotid gland | околоушная железа |
| pars, partis f | part, portion | часть, сторона |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| partialis, e | partial | частичный |
| pasta, ae f | paste | паста |
| pastillus, i m | lozenge | лекарственная па- стилка |
| patella, ae f | knee-cap | надколенник |
| patellaris, e | patellar | пателлярный |
| pectoralis, e | pectoral | грудной |
| pectus, ōris n; thorax, ācis m | chest | грудь; грудная клетка |
| pelvicus, a, um | pelvic | тазовый |
| pelvinus, a, um | pelvic | тазовый |
| pelvis renalis | renal pelvis | почечная лоханка |
| pelvis, is f | pelvis | таз, лоханка |
| perforans, āntis | perforating | прободающий |
| periarterialis, e | periarterial | периартериальный, вокругартериальный |
| perineum, i n | perineum, fork | промежность |
| periodontium, i n | peridental membrane | периодонт, надкост- ница зуба |
| periosteum, i n | periosteum | надкостница |
| peritonēum, i n | peritoneum | брюшина |
| perivascularis, e | perivascular | периваскулярный, вокругсосудистый |
| peronēus, a, um | peroneal | малоберцовый |
| peroralis, e; per os | by mouth, through the mouth, per os | пероральный, через рот |
| peroxydum, i n | peroxide | пероксид |
| Persīcum, i n | peach | персик |
| pes, pedis m | foot | стопа, нога |
| petrosus, a, um | petrous | каменистый |
| phalanx, ngis f | phalanx | фаланга |
| pharmacia, ae f | pharmaceutics | фармация |
| pharyngeus, a, um | pharyngeal | глоточный |
| pharynx, ngis m | pharynx | глотка |

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Phenylii salicýlas (ātis) m | phenyl salicylate | фенилсалицилат |
| phosphas, ātis m | phosphate | фосфат |
| pia mater, tris f | pia mater | мягкая мозговая оболочка |
| pilula, ae f | pill | пилюля |
| pipēritus, a, um | pepper (adj.) | перечный |
| pituitarius, a, um | pituitary | питуитарный |
| plantaris, e | plantar | подошвенный |
| planum, i n | plane | плоскость |
| planus, a, um | flat | плоский |
| plasma, ātis n | plasma | плазма |
| platýsma, ātis n | platysma | платизма |
| plexus, us m | plexus | сплетение |
| plica, ae f | fold | складка |
| Plumbum, i n | lead | свинец |
| pneumonia, ae f | pneumonia | пневмония |
| pollex, ĭcis m | thumb | большой палец кисти |
| polý pus, i m | polyp | полип |
| pons, pontis m | bridge | мост; образование, подобное мосту |
| porta, ae f | gate | ворота |
| post (c Acc.) | behind | 1. позади, за 2. после, спустя |
| postcibos (p. c.) | postcibal, after meals, after eating | после еды |
| posterior, ius | posterior | задний |
| postganglionaris, e | postganglionic | постганглионарный |
| praecentralis, e | precentral | прецентральный, предцентральный |
| praescrīptio, ōnis f, receptum, i n | prescription | рецепт |
| primus, a, um | first | первый |
| pro (c Abl.) | for | для, за |
| pro die | per day, daily | в день, в сутки |

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| processus, us m | process | отросток |
| profundus, a, um | deep | глубокий |
| prognōsis, is f | prognosis | прогноз |
| pronatio, ōnis f | pronation | пронация, поворот ладони вниз |
| pronātor, ōris m | pronator (muscle) | пронатор |
| prophylāxis, is f | prevention of disease | профилактика |
| propionas, ātis m | propionate | пропионат |
| proprius, a, um | proper | собственный |
| prostata, ae f | prostate gland | предстательная железа |
| prostaticus, a, um | prostatic | предстательный |
| protuberantia, ae f | protuberance | выступ, бугор |
| proximalis, e | proximal | проксимальный |
| pruritus, us m | itch | зуд кожи или слизистых оболочек |
| psoas, ātis m | psoas (muscle) | поясничная (мышца) |
| pterygoideus, a, um | pterygoid, wing-shaped | крыловидный |
| pterygopalatinus, a, um | pterygopalatine | крылонебный |
| pubes, is f | pubis | лобок |
| pulmo, ōnis m | lung | легкое |
| pulmonalis, e | pulmonary | легочный |
| pulpa, ae f | pulp | пульпа, мякоть |
| pulsus, us m | pulse | пульс |
| pulvis, ěris m | powder | порошок |
| punctio, ōnis f | puncture | пункция, прокол |
| pupilla, ae f | pupil | зрачок |
| purificatus, a, um | purified | очищенный |
| purus, a, um | pure | чистый |
| pus, puris n | pus | гной |
| pyloricus, a, um | pyloric | привратниковый |
| pylōrus, i m | pylorus | привратник, пилорус |
| pyramidalis, e | pyramidal | пирамидальный |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| pyrāmis, īdis f | pyramid | пирамида |
| Q | | |
| quadriceps, cipītis | quadriceps | четырёхглавый |
| quadrigeminus, a, um | quadrigeminal | четырёхпарный, чет- вертной |
| quantum libet, q.l. | as much as is desired | сколько угодно (в рецептах) |
| quantum satis, q.s., quantum sufficit, q.suff. | as much as suffices, as much as needed | (сколько нужно, сколько потребуется, сколько нужно (в рецептах) |
| quantum vis, q.v. | as much as you like | сколько угодно (в ре- цептах) |
| quantum, i n | how much, as much as | сколько |
| quaquehora, q.h. | every hour | каждый час (в рецептах) |
| quartus, a, um | fourth | четвёртый |
| quattuor | four | четыре |
| Quercus, us f | oak | дуб |
| quinque | five | пять |
| quintus, a, um | fifth | пятый |
| R | | |
| rabies, ēi f | rabies | бешенство |
| radialis, e | radial | лучевой |
| radiatio, ōnis f | radiation | лучистость |
| radius, i m | radius, radial (spoke) bone | лучевая кость |
| radix, īcis f | root | корень, корешок |
| ramus, i m | branch | ветвь |
| raphe, es f | seam, rhapshe | шов (на мягких тканях) |
| reanimatio, ōnis f | resuscitation | реанимация |
| recessus, us m | recess | углубление, карман |
| recīpe! | take! | возьми! |

| | | |
|----------------------|---|------------------------------|
| recipio, ěre III | take | взять |
| rectalis, e | rectal | ректальный |
| rectificātus, a, um | rectified | очищенный |
| rectum, i n | rectum | прямая кишка |
| regio, ōnis f | region | область |
| relatio medica | medical certificate, certificate of health | медицинское свидетельство |
| remedium, i n | remedy | средство |
| ren, renis m | kidney | почка |
| renalis, e | renal | почечный |
| repeto, ěre III | repeat | повторять |
| resectio, ōnis f | resection, excision | резекция |
| respiratio, ōnis f | respiration, breathing | дыхание |
| respiratorius, a, um | respiratory | дыхательный |
| rete, is n | network | сеть, сетка |
| reticularis, e | reticular | ретикулярный |
| retīna, ae f | retina | сетчатка |
| retinaculum, i n | retaining band | удерживатель |
| retromandibularis, e | retromandibular | позади- нижнечелюстной |
| retroperitonealis, e | retroperitoneal | забрюшинный |
| Rheum, i n | rhubarb | ревень |
| rhizōma, ātis n | rhizome | корневище |
| rhomboideus, a, um | rhombic | ромбовидный |
| Ricīnus, i m | castor-oil plant | клевещина |
| Rosa, ae f | wild rose | роза, шиповник |
| rotator, ōris m | rotator (muscle) | вращатель (мышца) |
| rotundus, a, um | round | круглый (отверстие) |
| ruber, bra, brum | red | красный |
| rubor, ōris | redness | покраснение |
| ruptura, ae f | rupture | разрыв |
| S | | |
| saccharum, i n | sugar | сахар |
| sacer, cra, crum | sacred | крестцовый (кость) |

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| sacralis, e | sacral | крестцовый |
| sacrococcygeus, a, um | sacrococcygeal | крестцово-копчиковый |
| sagittalis, e | sagittal | сагиттальный (стреловидный) |
| sal, salis m | salt | соль |
| salicylas, ātis m | salicylate | салицилат |
| salicylicus, a, um | salicylic | салициловый |
| Salvia, ae f | sage | шалфей |
| sanguineus, a, um | bloody | кровеносный, кровавый |
| sanguis, ĩnis m | blood | кровь |
| sarcōma, ātis n | sarcoma | саркома |
| satis | enough | довольно, достаточно |
| scabies, ēi f | scabies | чесотка |
| scalēnus, a, um | scalenus (muscle) | лестничный (мышца) |
| scaphoideus, a, um | scaphoid | ладьевидный |
| scatūla, ae f | box | коробка, коробочка |
| secretum, i n | secretion | секрет |
| sectio caesarea | c(a)esarean section | кесарево сечение |
| sectio legalis | post mortem, sectio legalis | судебно-медицинское вскрытие |
| sectio, ōnis f | section | рассечение, вскрытие |
| secundarius, a, um | secondary | вторичный |
| secundus, a, um | second | второй |
| sedatīva (remedia), n/pl | sedatives | седативные лекарственные средства |
| sella, ae f | saddle | седло |
| semen, ĩnis n | seed, semen | семя, семенная жидкость |
| semicircularis, e | semicircular | полукружный |
| semilunaris, e | semilunar | полулунный, серповидный |
| senilis, e | senile | старческий |

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| sensorius, a, um | sensory | чувствительный, сенсорный |
| sensus, us m | sense | чувство |
| septalis, e | septal | перегородочный |
| septum, i n | partition | перегородка |
| serotinus, a, um | late | поздний, запоздалый |
| seu | or | или |
| siccus, a, um | dry | сухой |
| sinister, tra, trum | left | 1. левый 2. неблагоприятный |
| sirupus, i m | syrup | сироп |
| solutio Ammonii caustici | liquid ammonia | нашатырный спирт, раствор аммиака |
| solutus, a, um | dissolved, solute | растворённый |
| species, ei f | tea | сбор (трав), чай |
| spissus, a, um | thick | густой |
| splanchna (pl) | internal organs | внутренности |
| spritz-tubulus, i m | syrette | шприц-тюбик |
| squama, ae f | scale | чешуя |
| sternum, i n | breast-bone | грудина |
| stoma, atis n | mouth, artificial opening | рот, уста, искусственное отверстие |
| stratum, i n | layer | слой |
| sub (c Acc., Abl.) | under | под |
| sub signo veneni, s.s.v. | under «poison» label | с обозначением (на этикетке) «яд!» сокр. в рецептах |
| subcarbōnas, atis m | basic carbonate | основной карбонат |
| subnitrās, atis m | basic nitrate | основной нитрат |
| succus, i m | juice | сок |
| sulcus, i m | groove | борозда, бороздка |
| sulfas, atis m | sulphate | сульфат |
| Sulfur, ūris n | sulphur | сера |
| supercilium, i n | eyebrow | бровь |
| superficialis, e | superficial | поверхностный |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| superficies, ēi f | superficies | наружная поверхность |
| superior, ius | superior | верхний |
| supinātio, ōnis f | supination | супинация, поворот ладони вверх |
| supinātor, ōris m | supinator (muscle) | супинатор (мышца) |
| suppositorium, i n | suppository (pl suppositories) | суппозиторий, свеча |
| supra | over | над, выше, на |
| supraclavicularis, e | supraclavicular | надключичный |
| suprahyoideus, a, um | suprahyoid | надподязычный |
| supraorbitalis, e | supraorbital | надглазничный |
| suprarenalis, e | suprarenal | надпочечный |
| suprēmus, a, um | highest | самый высокий, высочайший, наивысший |
| suspensio, ōnis f | suspension | суспензия |
| sutūra, ae f | suture | шов |
| sympathicus, a, um | sympathic | симпатический |
| Synoestrōlum, i n | synestrol | синэстрол |
| synovialis, e | synovial | синовиальный |
| systema, ātis n | system | система |
| Т | | |
| tabes, is f | tabes | сухотка |
| tabuleta, ae f | tablet | таблетка |
| taenia, ae f, vinculum, i n | band | лента, связка |
| Talcum, i n | talc | тальк |
| talocruralis, e | talocrural | голеностопный |
| talus, i m | ankle bone | таранная кость |
| tarsus, i m | tarsus | предплюсна, хрящ века |
| tegmen, ĩnis n | roof | крыша, покрывка |
| temporalis, e | temporal | височный |
| tempus, ōris n | temple, time | висок, время |

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--|
| tendo, ĩnis m | tendon | сухожилие |
| tenius, e | delicate | тонкий, нежный |
| tensor, ōris m | tensor muscle | напрягающая мышца |
| ter in die | three times a day | три раза в день |
| teres, ětis | round and long | круглый |
| terminalis, e | terminal | терминальный, конечный |
| terminatio, ōnis f | end | конец, окончание |
| tertius, a, | third | тринадцать |
| testis, is m | testicle | яичко, семенник |
| thalāmus, i m | thalamus | таламус (зрительный бугор) |
| therapeutica, ae f | therapeutics | терапевтика, наука о лечении болезней, наука о терапии |
| therapia, ae f | therapy | терапия |
| thiosulfas, ātis m | thiosulphate | тиосульфат |
| thoracicus, a, um | thoracic | грудной |
| thymus, i n | thymus | вилочковая железа |
| thyreoides, a, um | thyroid | щитовидный |
| thyrohyoides, a, um | thyrohyoid | щито-подъязычный |
| tibialis, e | tibial | большеберцовый |
| tinctūra, ae f | tincture | настойка |
| tonīca (remedia) n/pl | tonics | тонизирующие лекар- ственные средства |
| tonīcus, a, um | tonic | тонизирующий |
| tonsilla, ae f | tonsil | миндалина |
| toxicus, a, um | toxic, poisonous | токсический, ядовитый |
| trachea, ae f | trachea | трахея |
| tractus, us m | tract | путь, тракт |
| transfusio, ōnis f | transfusion | переливание |
| transversus, a, um | transverse | поперечный |
| trauma, ātis n | trauma | травма |
| tres, tria | three | три |

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| triangularis, e | triangular | треугольный |
| triceps, cipītis | triceps (muscle) | трёхглавый |
| tricuspidalis, e | tricuspid | трёхстворчатый |
| trigeminus, a, um | trigeminal (IV cranial nerve) | тройничный (нерв) |
| triginta | thirty | тридцать |
| Tritīcum, i n | wheat | пшеница |
| trochanter, ēris m | trochanter | вертел |
| trochantericus, a, um | trochanteric | вертельный |
| trochlea, ae f | trochlea | блок |
| trochlearis, e | trochlear | блоковый, относя- щийся к блоку |
| trophicus, a, um | trophic | трофический |
| truncus, i m | trunk | туловище |
| tuba, ae f | tube | труба |
| tuber, ěris n | tuber | бугор |
| tuberculum, i n | tubercle | бугорок |
| tuberositas, ātis f | tuberosity | бугристость |
| tuberōsus, a, um | tuberous | бугристый |
| tubulus, i m | tubule | трубочка |
| tumor, ōris m | tumour | опухоль |
| tunīca, ae f | coat | оболочка |
| tussis, is f | cough | tussis, is f |
| tympanicus, a, um | tympanic | барабанный |
| tympānum, i n | drum | барабан |
| U | | |
| ulcerosus, a, um | ulcerative | язвенный |
| ulcus, ěris n | ulcer | язва |
| ulna, ae f | elbow bone | локтевая кость |
| ulnaris, e | ulnar | локтевой |
| undecim | eleven | одиннадцать |
| undecimus, a, um | eleventh | одиннадцатый |
| unguentum, i n | ointment | мазь |
| unguis, is m | nail | ноготь |

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| unus, a, um | one | один |
| urēter, ēris m | ureter | мочеточник |
| urethra, ae f | urethra | уретра, мочеиспускательный канал |
| urethralis, e | urethral | уретральный |
| urinarius, a, um | urinary | мочевой |
| urogenitalis, e | genitourinary | мочеполовой |
| Urtīca, ae f | fettle | крапива |
| uterīnus, a, um | uterine | маточный |
| utērus, i m | uterus, womb | матка |
| V | | |
| vagīna, ae f | vagina, sheath | влагалище |
| vaginalis, e | vaginal | влагалищный |
| vagus, a, um | vagus nerve (Xth cranial nerve) | блуждающий (нерв) |
| Valeriāna officinalis | common [cat's] valerian, garden heliotrope | лекарственная валериана |
| Valeriāna, ae f | valerian | валериана |
| valetūdo, ĩnis f | health | здоровье |
| valva, ae f | valve | клапан (в целом) |
| valvula, ae f | valvule | заслонка, клапан |
| varicella, ae f | chicken-pox | варицелла, ветряная оспа |
| varices, m, f/pl | varicosis | варикозное расширение вен |
| varicōsus, a, um | varicose | варикозный |
| varix, ĩcis m, f | varix, varicose vein | варикозная вена |
| vas, vasis n | vessel | сосуд |
| vascularis, e | vascular | сосудистый |
| vena, ae f | vein | вена |
| venēnum, i n | poison | яд |
| venōsus, a, um | venousl | венозный, венный |
| venter, tris m; abdōmen, ĩnis n | belly | брюшко (мышцы), брюхо; живот, брюхо |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| ventralis, e | ventral | вентральный |
| ventricularis, e | veniricular | желудочковый |
| ventriculus, i m | ventricule | желудочек, желудок |
| venula, ae f | venule | маленькая вена |
| vermiformis, e | vermiform | червеобразный |
| vertebra, ae f | vertebra | позвонок |
| vertebralis, e | vertebral | позвоночный |
| vertex, ĩcis m | crown of the head | темя, вершина |
| verto, ěre III | turn | поворачивать |
| vesĭca fellea, vesĭca biliaris | gallbladder | желчный пузырь |
| vesĭca urinaria | urinary bladder | мочевой пузырь |
| vesĭca, ae f | bladder | пузырь |
| vesicula, ae f | vesicle | везикула, пузырек |
| vesicularis, e | vesicular | везикулярный |
| vesiculosus, a, um | vesiculose | везикулезный, пузырчатый |
| vestibularis, e | vestibular | преддверный, вестибулярный |
| via, ae f | way | путь |
| viginti | twenty | двадцать |
| villus, i m | villus | ворсинка |
| Viōla, ae f | violet | фиалка |
| virus, i n | virus | яд, вирус |
| viscĕra, um n pl | viscera | внутренности, вну- тренние органы в брюшной полости |
| viscus, ěris n | viscera | внутренность |
| vĭta, ae f | life | жизнь |
| vitamĭnum, i n | vitamin | витамин |
| vitrum, i n | test-tube | склянка, пробирка |
| vivus, a, um | alive | живой |
| volvulus, i m | twisted bowels | заворот кишок |
| vomer, ěris m | plowshare | сошник |

| | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| vortex, ĭcis m | vortex (of heart) | завиток (сердца) |
| vulnus, ěris n | wound | рана |
| X | | |
| Xeroformĭum, i n | xeroform | ксероформ |
| Z | | |
| zygōma, ātis n | cheek bone | скула, скуловая кость |
| zygomatĭcus, a, um | zygomatic | скуловой |

**LATIN-ENGLISH
CLINICAL COMBINING FORMS**

| A | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| abdomino-, laparo- | abdomen |
| acro-, -acria | limb |
| acromio- | acromion |
| adeno- | gland |
| -masto- | mammary gland |
| -pancreato- | pancreas |
| -parotido- | parotid gland |
| -prostato- | prostate |
| -thymo- | thymus |
| -thyreo-, thyr(e)-oideo- | thyroid gland |
| adeno- | lymph node |
| -ganglio- | ganglion |
| aesthesio-, -aesthesia | sensitivity |
| aetio- | cause |
| aero- | air |
| algo-, -algia, -algesia, -odynia | pain |
| allo- | other, different |
| andro-, andria | male |
| angio- | vessel |
| aniso- | unequal |
| anthropo- | human |
| aorto- | aorta |
| arterio- | artery |
| arthro- | joint |
| astheno-, -asthenia | weakness |
| auto- | self |
| B | |
| bath(y)- | deep |
| bio- | life |
| -blastus, blasto- | embryonic |

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| blepharo- | eyelid |
| brachy- | short |
| brady- | slow |
| bary- | heavy |
| brachi- | shoulder |
| C | |
| carcino-, carcinoma(t)o- | cancer |
| cardio-, -cardium | heart |
| -cele | hernia |
| -centesis | puncture |
| cephalo-, -cephalia, kephalo- | head |
| cervico-, trachelo- | cervix of uterus |
| cheilo-, -cheilia | lip |
| cheiro-, chiro, -cheiria | hand |
| chloro- | green, chlorine |
| cholangio- | bile duct |
| cholecysto- | gallbladder |
| choledocho- | common bile duct |
| chondro- | cartilage |
| chrom(at)o-, chromia | colour |
| chromo- | colouring |
| chrono- | time |
| clasia- | destruction |
| colpo-, sterco- | vagina |
| corpo-, sterco- | feces |
| cox- | thigh |
| crino-, -crinia | secretion |
| cryo- | low temperature |
| cyano- | blue, cyanic |
| cysto- | bladder |
| -cholecysto- | gallbladder |
| cyt-, cyto- | cell |
| -cytosis | increased amount (of blood cells) |

| D | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| dacryo- | tear |
| dacryocysto- | lacrimal sac |
| dactylo- | finger |
| derma-, dermo-, dermato- | skin |
| -desis | binding |
| dolicho- | elongated |
| dynamo-, -dynamia | force, power |
| E | |
| -ectasia, -ectasis | dilation |
| -ectomy | excision |
| encephalo- | brain |
| entero- | intestine |
| -colo- | colon |
| -colo- | large intestine |
| -duodeno | duodenum |
| -entero- | small intestine |
| -ileo- | ileum |
| -jejuno- | jejunum |
| -procto- | rectum |
| -sigmoido- | sigmoid colon |
| -typhlo- | caecum |
| ergo-, -ergia | reactivity |
| erythro- | red |
| eu- | normal |
| eurysis | dilation of hollow organ |
| G | |
| galacto- | milk |
| gastro-, -gastria | stomach |
| genio-, -genia | chin |
| -genesis | development |
| -genus | caused by, causing |
| ger(i)-, gero-, geronto- | senile |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| glosso-, -glossia | tongue |
| glyco-, gluco- | glucose |
| gnatho-, -gnathia | upper jaw |
| -genia | lower jaw |
| gnosia, -gnosis | knowledge |
| gono- | knee |
| -gramma | record |
| -graphia | recording |
| gyn(aec)o- | female |
| H | |
| haemo-, haemato-, -aemia | blood |
| hemi- | half |
| hepato- | liver |
| hetero- | different |
| hidro- | sweat |
| hist(io)- | tissue |
| homeo- | same |
| hydro- | water |
| hystero-, metro-, -metra-, -metrium | uterus, womb |
| I | |
| iater- | physician |
| -iatria, -therapia | treatment |
| irido- | iris |
| iso- | equal |
| -itis | inflammation |
| K | |
| kerato- | cornea |
| kinem(at)o-, kineto-, kinesia | movement |
| L | |
| laparo- | abdomen |
| laryngo- | larynx |
| lepto- | soft |
| leuco- | white |

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| lieno-, spleno- | spleen |
| lipo- | fat |
| litho- | stone |
| -logia | study, science |
| logo- | word |
| logo-, -lalia | speech |
| lymphadeno- | lymph node |
| lymphangio- | lymph vessel |
| lympho-, chylo- | lymph |
| -lysis | destruction |
| lyt-, -lysis | dissolution |
| M | |
| macro- | large |
| -malacia | softening |
| melo- | cheek |
| megal(o)-, -megalia, macro- | enlargement |
| melano- | dark, black |
| meningo- | meninges |
| leptomeningo- | soft meninx |
| -pachymeningo- | hard meninx |
| metr-, -metria | measuring |
| micro- | small |
| -oligo- | scanty |
| -mnesia | memory |
| morpho- | shape; form |
| myelo- | medullary substance |
| -myelo- | spinal cord |
| -osteomyelo- | bone marrow |
| myo-, -mysium | muscle |
| N | |
| nephro-, -reno- | kidney |
| noso- | disease |
| neo- | new |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| necro- | death |
| O | |
| odonto-, -odontia | tooth |
| oligo- | insufficient |
| omphalo- | navel |
| onco-, -oma | tumour |
| onycho-, -onychia | nail |
| oophoro-, ovario- | ovary |
| oo- | ovum |
| op-, -opia, ophtalmo-, ophthalmia | eye |
| opsia | vision |
| orchid-, orchido-, -orchia, -orchidia | testicle |
| ortho- | straight |
| -osis | condition |
| osteo- | bone |
| oto-, -otia | ear |
| -oxia, oxy- | oxidation |
| oxy-, oxygenio- | oxygen |
| P | |
| pachy- | thick |
| paedo- | child |
| pan-, panto- | whole, all |
| patho-, -pathia | disease |
| -penia | decreased number |
| perineo- | perineum |
| peritoneo- | peritoneum |
| -pexia | fixation |
| phaco-, -phakia | lens |
| phago-, -phagia | swallowing, eating |
| pharmaco- | drug |
| pharyngo- | pharynx |
| philo-, -philia | predisposition to |
| phlebo- | vein |

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| -phobia | fear |
| phono-, -phonia | sound, voice |
| phreno-, psycho- | mind |
| phrenico- | diaphragmatic |
| -plasia | development |
| -plastica | plastic surgery |
| platy- | flat |
| -plegia | paralysis |
| pneumo-, pneumono- | lung; air in organ |
| -pnoë | respiration |
| podo-, -podia | foot |
| poly- | multiple |
| -poësis | formation |
| -privus | deprived |
| procto- | anus, rectum |
| pseudo- | false |
| psycho- | mind |
| -ptosis | prolapse |
| pyelo- | renal pelvis |
| pyloro- | pylorus |
| pyo- | pus |
| pyr(et)o- | fever |
| R | |
| retino- | retina |
| rhachio- | spine |
| -rhaphia | suturing |
| -rhexis | rupture |
| rhino- | nose |
| -rrhagia | bleeding |
| -rrhoea | discharge |
| S | |
| salpingo- | tube |
| -salpingo- | fallopian tube |

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| -salpingo- | Eustachian tube |
| schiso-, -schisis | cleft |
| sclero-, pachy- | hard |
| sclero- | white of eye |
| -scopia | visual examination |
| sialo-, -sialia | saliva |
| soma-, somato- | body |
| spasmo- | spasm |
| sphygmo-, -sphygmia | pulse |
| splanchno- | viscera |
| spondylo- | vertebra |
| -stasis | control; arrest; congestion |
| steno-, stenosis | tightening |
| stetho- | chest |
| stom(at)o- | mouth |
| -stomia | placing a fistula |
| T | |
| tachy- | fast |
| -tensio | hydrostatic pressure |
| tel(e)o- | distant |
| teno- | tendon |
| thalamo- | thalamus |
| thermo-, -thermia | heat |
| thoraco- | chest |
| -tomia | dissection |
| tomo- | layer |
| tono-, -tonia | tone; pressure |
| topo- | place; location |
| toxo-, toxi(c)o- | poison(ous) |
| tracheo- | windpipe |
| tricho-, -trichia | hair |
| tropho-, -trophia | nourishment |
| tropo-, -tropia | affecting |

| | |
|----------------------|-----------|
| U | |
| ulo- | gum |
| urano- | palate |
| uretero- | ureter |
| uro-, -uresis, -uria | urination |
| X | |
| xantho- | yellow |
| xero- | dry |

ENGLISH-LATIN CLINICAL COMBINING FORMS

| | |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| A | |
| abdomen | abdomino-, laparo- |
| acromion | acromio- |
| affecting | tropo-, -tropia |
| affixing | -pexis, -pexia |
| air | aëro- |
| all | pan-, panto- |
| anus | procto- |
| aorta | aorto- |
| artery | arterio- |
| B | |
| bile | chol-, -cholia |
| bile duct | cholangio- |
| binding | -desis |
| black | melano- |
| bladder | cysto- |
| bleeding | -rrhagia |
| blood | haemo-, haemato-, -aemia |
| blue | cyano- |
| body | soma-, somato- |
| bone | osteo- |
| bone marrow | -osteomyelo- |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| brain | encephalo- |
| C | |
| cancer | carcino-, carcinoma((at)o)- |
| cartilage | chondro- |
| cause | aetio- |
| caused by, causing | -genus |
| cell | cyt-, cyto-, kytos |
| cervix of uterus | cervico-, trachelo- |
| cheek | melo- |
| chest | stetho-, thoraco- |
| chin | genio-, -genia |
| child | paedo- |
| cleft | schiso-, -schisis |
| colour | chrom(at)o-, -chromia |
| colouring | chromo- |
| common bile duct | choleodocho- |
| condition | -osis |
| congestion | -stasis |
| control | -stasis |
| cornea | kerato- |
| cutting | -tomia |
| cyanic | cyano- |
| D | |
| dark | melano- |
| death | necro- |
| decreased number (of blood cells) | - penia |
| deep | bath(y)- |
| deprived | -privus |
| destruction | -clasia |
| destruction | -lysis |
| development | -genesis; -plasia |
| diaphragmatic | phrenico- |
| different | allo-; hetero- |

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| dilation | -ectasia, -ectasis |
| dilation of hollow organ | -eurysis |
| discharge | -rrhoea |
| disease | noso-; patho-, -pathia |
| dissolution | lyt-, -lysis |
| dissection | -tomia |
| distant | tel(e)o-, tele-, telo- |
| drug | pharmaco- |
| dry | xero- |
| E | |
| ear | oto-, -otia |
| eating | phago-, -phagia |
| elongated | dolicho- |
| embryonic | -blastus, blasto- |
| enlargement | megal(o)-, -megalia, macro- |
| equal | iso- |
| examination | -scopia |
| excision | -ectomia |
| eye | op-, -opia, ophthalmo-, -ophthalmia |
| eyelid | blepharo- |
| F | |
| false | pseudo- |
| fast | tachy- |
| fat | lipo- |
| fear | -phobia |
| female | gyn(aec)o- |
| feces | copro-, sterco- |
| fever | pyr(et)o- |
| finger | dactylo- |
| fixation | -pexia |
| flat | platy- |
| foot | podo-, -podia |
| force, power | dynamo-, -dynamia |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| formation | -poësis |
| G | |
| gallbladder | cholecysto- |
| ganglion | ganglio- |
| gland | adeno- |
| - mammary gland | masto- |
| - pancreas | pancreato- |
| - parotid gland | parotido- |
| - prostate | prostato- |
| - thymus | thymo- |
| - thyroid gland | -thyreo-, thyr(e)(oideo)- |
| glucose | glyco-, gluco- |
| green | chloro- |
| gum | ulo- |
| H | |
| hair | tricho-, -trichia |
| half | hemi- |
| hand | cheiro-, chiro-, -cheiria |
| hard | sclero-, pachy- |
| head | cephalo-, -cephalia, kephalo- |
| heart | cardio-, -cardium |
| heat | thermo-, -thermia |
| heavy | bary- |
| hernia | -cele |
| human | anthropo- |
| hydrostatic pressure | -tensio |
| I | |
| incision | -tomia |
| increased amount (of blood cells) | -cytosis |
| indurated | sclero-, pachy- |
| inflammation | -itis |
| insufficient | oligo- |
| intestine | entero- |

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| - large intestine | colo- |
| - caecum | typhlo- |
| - colon | colo- |
| - duodenum | duodeno- |
| - ileum | ileo- -ileum |
| -jejunum | jejuno- |
| - rectum | procto- |
| - sigmoid colon | sigmoido- |
| - small intestine | entero- |
| iris | irido- |
| jaw: - lower jaw | -genia |
| upper jaw | gnatho-, -gnathia |
| joint | arthro- |
| K | |
| kidney | nephro-, reno- |
| knee | gono- |
| knowledge | -gnosia, -gnosis |
| L | |
| lacrimal sac | dacryocysto- |
| large | macro- |
| larynx | laryngo- |
| layer | tomo- |
| lens | phaco-, -phakia |
| life | bio- |
| limb | aero-, -acria |
| lip | cheilo-, -cheilia |
| liver | hepato- |
| location | topo- |
| low temperature | cryo- |
| lung; air in organ | pneumo-, pneumono- |
| lymph | lympho-, chylo- |
| lymph node | adeno-, lymphadeno- |
| lymph vessel | lymphangio- |

| M | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| male | andro-, -andria |
| measuring | metr-, -metria |
| medullary substance | myelo- |
| memory | -mnesia |
| meninges | meningo- |
| - soft meninx | leptomeningo- |
| - hard meninx | -pachymeningo |
| milk | galacto- |
| mind | phreno-, psycho- |
| mouth | stom(at)o- |
| movement | kinem(at)o-, kineto-, -kinesia |
| multiple | poly- |
| muscle | myo-, -mysium |
| N | |
| nail | onycho-, -onychia |
| navel | omphalo- |
| new | neo- |
| normal | eu- |
| nose | rhino- |
| nourishment | tropho-, -trophia |
| O | |
| other | allo- |
| ovary | oophoro-, ovario- |
| ovum | oo- |
| oxidation | -oxia, oxy- |
| oxygen | oxy-, oxygenio- |
| P | |
| pain | algo-, -algia, -algesia, -odynia |
| palate | urano- |
| paralysis | -plegia |
| perineum | perineo- |
| peritoneum | peritoneo- |

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| pharynx | pharyngo- |
| physician | -iater |
| place | topo- |
| placing a fistula | -stomia |
| plastic surgery | -plastica |
| poison(ous) | toxco-, toxi(c)o- |
| predisposition to | philo-, -philia |
| pressure | tono-, -tonia |
| prolapse, a falling | -ptosis |
| pulse | sphygmo-, -sphygmia |
| puncture | -centesis |
| pus | pyo- |
| pylorus | pyloro- |
| R | |
| reactivity | ergo-, -ergia |
| record | -gramma |
| recording | -graphia |
| red | erythro- |
| renal pelvis | pyelo- |
| respiration | -pnoë |
| retina | retino- |
| rupture | -rhexis |
| saliva | sialo-, -sialia |
| same | homeo- |
| scanty | -oligo- |
| secretion | crino-, -crinia |
| self | auto- |
| senile | ger(i)-, gero-, geronto- |
| sensitivity | aesthesio-, -aesthesia |
| shape, form | morpho- |
| shaping | -plasia |
| short | brachy- |
| shoulder | brachi- |

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| skin | -derma, dermo-, dermato- |
| slow | brady- |
| small | micro- |
| soft | lepto- |
| softening | -malacia |
| sound, voice | phono-, -phonia |
| spasm | spasmo- |
| speech | logo-, -lalia |
| spinal cord | myelo- |
| spine | rhachio- |
| spleen | lieno-, spleno- |
| stomach | gastro-, -gastria |
| stone | litho- |
| straight | ortho- |
| study, science | -logia |
| suffering | pathos, -pathia |
| suturing | -rhapsia |
| sweat | hidro- |
| swallowing, eating | phago-, -phagia |
| T | |
| tear | dacryo- |
| tendon | teno- |
| testicle | orchid-, orchido-, -orchia, -orchidia |
| thalamus | thalamo- |
| thick | pachy- |
| thigh | cox- |
| tightening | steno-, -stenosis |
| time | chrono- |
| tissue | hist(io)- |
| tone | tono-, -tonia |
| tongue | glosso-, -glossia |
| tooth | odonto-, -odontia |
| treatment | -iatria, -therapia |

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| tube | salpingo- |
| Eustachian tube | salpingo- |
| fallopian tube | salpingo- |
| tumour | onco-, -oma |
| U | |
| unequal | aniso- |
| ureter | uretero- |
| urination | uro-, -uresis, -uria |
| uterus | hystero-, metro-, -metra-, -metrium |
| V | |
| vagina | colpo-, vagino- |
| vein | phlebo- |
| vertebra | spondylo- |
| vessel | angio- |
| viscera | splanchno- |
| vision | -opsia |
| visual examination | -scopia- |
| W | |
| water | hydro- |
| weakness | astheno-, -asthenia |
| white | leuco- |
| white of eye | sclero- |
| whole | pan-, panto- |
| windpipe | tracheo- |
| word | logo- |
| write | -grapho |
| Y | |
| yellow | xantho- |

APPENDIX
LATIN PROVERBS, QUOTATIONS
AND MEDICAL PHRASES

A

Ab ovo (usque ad mala) – “From eggs to apples”, i. e. “From the very beginning up to the end”. It comes from the Roman custom to begin breakfast with an egg and end it with an apple.

A mari usque ad mare — “From sea to sea”, motto of Canada.

Acta est fabula — “The fable is ended” (Augustus’ last words).

Ad astro — “To the stars”, title of the magazine published by the National Space Society.

Ad astra per aspera — “To the stars through difficulties,” motto of Kansas. (More frequently as *per aspera ad astra*).

Ad impossibilia nemo tenetur — “Nobody must keep a commitment to do impossible things”.

Adde parvum parvo manus acervus erit — “Add little to little and there will be a big pile” — Ovid.

Aegroto dum anima est, spes est — “As long as a sick person is conscious (or, has a good character, or reacts), there is still hope”.

Aliis inserviendo consumer – “I burn serving others”. This is the motto accompanying a flaming candle and serving an emblem of healing, used since the ancient time, just like the main emblem of healing – a cup with a snake.

Alpha et omega — “Alpha and omega”, i. e. “The beginning and the end”. Alpha is the first letter in the Greek alphabet and omega is the last.

Álma máter – literally means “A feeding mother”.

Amor patriae nostra lex — “Love of the fatherland is our law”.

Amor vincit omnia — “Love conquers all”.

Anamnesis morbi — “Present case history”.

Anamnesis vitae — “Past history”.

A posteriōri — “Based on practice”. It literally means “Coming from the posterior experience”, usually it is used in Latin.

A priōri — “Independently of experience”. It is usually cited in Latin.

Ars longa, vita brevis — “Art (of medicine) is long, life is short”. The Latin translation by Horace of a phrase from Hippocrates, often used out of context. The art referred to in the original aphorism was the craft of medicine, which took a lifetime to acquire.

Audentes fortuna iuvat — “Luck helps those who are brave”. (Virgil, *Eneis* 10,284)

Audi, vide, tace, si tu vis vivere — “Hear, see, be silent, if you wish to live”.

Audiatur et altera pars — “Hear both sides”. (A legal fairness principle).

B

Bene diagnosticitur, bene curatur — “Something that is well diagnosed can be cured well”.

Bis dat, qui cito dat — “He who gives quickly gives twice”.

Bona diagnosis, bona curatio — “Good diagnosis, good cure”.

Bona valetudo melior est quam maximae divitiae — “Good health is worth more than the greatest wealth.”

C

Casus extraordinarius — “An extraordinary case”.

Casus ordinarius — “An ordinary case”.

Cf. = cónfer — “Compare with”.

Cibi condimentum est fames — “Hunger is a spice for any meal”.

Citius, altius, fortius — “Quicker, higher, stronger”. The motto is inscribed on Olympic medals.

Civis romanum sum — “I am a Roman” (Cicero)

Claude os, aperi oculos! — “Shut up and watch!”

Cogito ergo sum — “I think, therefore I am”. Argument used by Rene Descartes as proof of his own existence.

Consuetudinis vis magna est — “The power of habit is great”.

Consuetudo altera natura est — “Habit is second nature”.

Contra vim mortis non est medicamen in hortis — “There’s no herb against the power of death”.

Contraria contrariis curantur — “Opposites are cured by their opposites”.

Cujusvis hominis est errare — “Every human can err”. (Cicero)

Cum recte vivis, ne cures verba malorum — “If you live properly, don’t worry about what the evil ones say” (Cato the younger)

Cura, ut valeas! — “Take Care!”

Curriculum vitae — literally it means “Life movement”. This word combination is applied to biography or autobiography.

D

De gustibus non est disputandum — “Matters of taste ought not to be disputed”.

De mortuis nihil nisi bene — “Of the dead, nothing but good”. I.e., “Say only good things about the dead”.

Deserta faciunt et pacem appellant — “They destroy everything and they call it peace.” (Tacitus).

Deus vult! — “God wills it!” —slogan of the Crusades.

Divide et impèra — “Divide and govern”. Attributed to Julius Caesar.

Docendo discimus — “We learn by teaching” (Seneca).

Donec eris felix multos numerabis amicos — “As long as you’re happy, you’ll have many friends” (Ovid, *Tristia* 1, 9, 5).

Dosis pro cursu — “Dose for the course of treatment”.

Dosis pro die — “Daily dose”.

Dosis pro dosi — “Single dose”.

Dulce enim etiam nomen est pacis — “The name ‘peace’ is sweet itself”.

Dum spiro, spero — “As long as I breathe, I hope”.

Duo cum faciunt idem, non est idem — “When two do the same, it isn’t the same”.

Dura lex, sed lex — “The law is harsh, but it is the law”.

Dura necessitas — “Necessity is harsh”.

E

E fructu arbor cognoscitur — “The tree can be recognized by its fruits”.

e. g. = exempli grātia — “For example, for instance”.

Errāre humanum est. Perseverāre diabolicum — “To err is human. To persist in error is of the Devil” (Seneca).

etc. = et cetera — “And other things: and so on; and the rest: and all the others”.

Ex astris, Scientia — “From the stars, Knowledge” (the motto of Starfleet Academy in *Star Trek*).

Ex nihilo nihil fit — “Nothing comes from nothing” (you need to work for something; also the Conservation Law in philosophy and modern science). (Lucretius).

Ex oriente lux — “From the East [comes] the light [i.e. culture]”.

Exītus letalis — “A mortal outcome”.

F

Facies Hippocratica — Hippocrates’ face. This word combination is used to mean a face of a dying man. It is one of the medical expressions which include the name of Hippocrates, the founder of medicine. It is known that Hippocrates was the first to describe a face of a man with signs of coming death in his work “Prognostic”.

Festīna lente! — “Make haste slowly” (i.e. proceed quickly but with caution, a motto of Augustus Caesar).

Fiat lux! — “Let there be light!”

Finis coronat opus — “All’s well that ends well”.

Fluctuat nec mergitur — “Shaken by the waves, but it will not sink” (inscription on Paris’ coat of arms).

Fortasse erit, fortasse non erit — “Maybe it will be, maybe it will not”.

G

Gratis — “Free of charge”.

Gutta cavat lapidem [non vi, sed saepe cadendo] — “A drop drills the rock [not with force but by falling repeatedly]” (Ovid, *Epistulae ex Ponto*).

Gutta cavat lapidem non bis, sed saepe cadendo; sic homo fit sapiens bis non, sed saepe legendo — “A drop drills a rock by falling not twice, but many times; so too is a human made smart by reading not two, but many books” (Giordano Bruno).

H

Habitus agroti — “The patient’s outward appearance”.

Hic locus est, ubi mors gaudet succurrere vitae — “This is the place where death helps life” (the mortuary).

Hodie mihi, cras tibi — “What’s to me today, tomorrow to you”.

Homines quod volunt credunt — “Men believe what they want to” (Julius Caesar).

Homo homini lupus est — “Man is a wolf to man” (Thomas Hobbes).

Homo proponit, sed Deus disponit — “Man proposes, God disposes” (Thomas a Kempis).

Homo quadratus — “A highly educated and perfectly built person”. A drawing of a man placed into a circle and also into a square was an emblem of artistic anatomy.

Homo sum, humani nihil a me alienum puto — “I am human, so nothing that is human is foreign to me” (Terence).

Honores mutant mores — “Honors change behavior”.

Hygiēna amica valitudinis — “Hygiene is a friend of health”.

I

i.e. = id est — “That is to say; that is”.

Ignorantia non est argumentum. “Lack of knowledge is no excuse (ignorance is no argument)”, Spinoza. *Ethica*, part I.

Ignorantia legis non excusat — “Ignorance of the law is no excuse”.

In statu praesenti — “In the present condition”.

In statu quo ante — “In the same condition as before”.

In vino veritas — “There is truth in wine” (“Wine will bring out truth”).

Ira furor brevis est — “Anger is a short rage” (Horace).

J

Justitia omnibus — “Justice for all”, motto of the District of Columbia.

L

Labor omnia vincit — “Work conquers all things” (Virgil). Motto of the Slate of Oklahoma

Laborare est orare — “To work is to pray” (A common school motto).

Libertati viam facere — “Making a road to freedom”.

M

Mala herba cito crescit — “Weeds grow fast”.

Manus manum lavat — “One hand washes the other”.

Mater artium necessitas — “Necessity is the mother of invention” (Apuleius).

Maxima debetur puero reverentia — “One owes the greatest possible care for the child” (Juvenal).

Medīca mente, non medicamentis — “Cure with your knowledge rather than drugs”.

Medice, cura te ipsum! — “Doctor, cure yourself!”

Medicus curat, natura sanat — “The doctor cares [for his patient], nature heals [him]” or “Doctor cures, nature saves”.

Memento mori — “Remember your mortality”. Also, ironically, “Remember to die” (the motto of the Friars of Trappa).

Mens sana in corpore sano — “Healthy mind in healthy body”.

Modus vivendi — “Mode of life, way of life”.

N

Naturalia non sunt turpia — “Natural things are not shameful”.

Nemo iudex in causa sua — “No-one is a judge in his own case”.

Nil (nihil) admirari — “To not admire anything” you shouldn’t let yourself be taken away by anything (Horace).

Nomen est omen — “A name is an omen”.

Nomina sunt odiosa — “Names are odious” (Cicero).

Non bis in idem — “Not twice in the same (matter)”. Legal principle forbidding Double jeopardy.

Non nobis solum nati sumus — “We are not born for ourselves alone”.

Non scholae, sed vitae discimus — “We don’t learn for school but for life”.

Non ut edam vivo, sed ut vivam edo — “I don’t live to eat, but I eat to live”.

Nosce te ipsum! — “Know thyself!” (Cicero, from the Greek gnolhi seauton, on the Temple of Apollo at Delphi).

NB! = **Nóta béne!** The Latin phrase means “Take special notice”, used for paying or drawing attention.

Nulla dies sine linea — “No day without a line”.

Nulla est medicina sine lingua Latina — “No medicine without Latin”

Nulla regūla sine exceptiōne — “No rule without exception”.

Nulla res tam necessaria est quam medicina — “Nothing is so necessary as medicine”.

Nunc aut numquam — “Now or never”.

O

Oculi plus vident quam oculus — “Several eyes see more than only one”.

Omne vivum ex ovo — “Everything living comes from the egg”.

Omnia mea mecum porto — “All that’s mine I carry with me”. These words are ascribed by Cicero to Byas, one of seven wisemen of Old Greece. It means that the true wealth of a man is his inner dignity.

Omnia praeclara rara — “Everything which is beautiful is rare”.

Omnium artium medicīna nobilissīma est — “Medicine is the noblest of all arts”.

Optimum medicamentum quies est — “Peace is the best medicine” (the words of Celsus).

O tempora, o mores! — “Oh what time, oh what habits!” (Cicero).

P

Pacta servanda sunt — “Agreements must be honoured”.

Per ardua ad astra — “Through hardship to the stars” (motto of the Royal Air Force and Royal New Zealand Air Force and Royal Australian Air Force).

Per aspera ad astra — “By steep and toil some ways to the stars”. (Seneca). The British Air force motto. It is used to mean: through toil to victory; achieving one’s aim, realizing one’s cherished dream by overcoming all the difficulties.

Per fas et nefas — “With right and wrong” by any means necessary.

Per scientiam ad salutem aegroti — “To heal the sick through knowledge”.

Per vias naturales — “(Delivery) through natural passages”.

Periculum in mora — “[There’s] danger in delay” (Livy).

Plenus venter non studet libenter — “A full belly doesn’t like studying”.

Post cenam non stare sed mille passus meare — “Do not rest after dinner, but walk a mile”.

Post hoc non est propter hoc — “‘After this’ is not ‘because of this’”.

Post mortem — “After death”.

Post partum — “After delivery”.

Potius sero quam nunquam — “Better late than never” (Livy).

Praesente medico nihil nocet — “In the presence of a doctor nothing can harm”.

Primum non nocere — “First, do no harm” (often falsely attributed to the Hippocratic Oath).

Pro analysi — “For analysis “.

Pro auctore seu pro me — “For the author or for myself” (when the doctor makes out a prescription for himself).

Prognosis optima (pessima) — “Favourable (unfavourable) prognosis”.

Q

Qualis rex, talis grex — “Like king, like people”.

Quern dii oderunt, paedagogum fecerunt — “Whom the gods hated, they made them pedagogues”

Qui dormit non peccet — “He who sleeps does not sin”.

Qui rogat, non errat — “Who asks isn’t wrong”.

Qui scribit, bis legit — “Who writes, reads twice”.

Qui tacet consentit — “He who is silent, agrees”.

Quidquid discis, tibi discis — “Whatever you learn, you learn it for yourself”

Quod medicina aliis, aliis est acre venenum — “One person’s medicine is another’s foul poison”.

Quod nocet, saepe docet — “That which harms, often brings a benefit”.

Quod non est in actis, non est in mundo — “What is not in the documents does not exist”.

Quot capita, tot sensus — “So many heads, so many minds”.

Quot homines, tot sententiae — “As many opinions as people”.

R

Repetitio est mater studiorum — “Repetition is the mother of learning”.

Restitutio ad integrum — “Recovery to the initial healthy state “.

S

Saepe morborum gravium exitus incerti sunt — “The effects of serious illnesses are often unknown”.

Salus populi – suprēma lex — “The welfare of the people is the supreme law”, said Cicero in his work “Of laws”.

Salus aegrōti suprēma lex — “The well-being of the patient is the sacred law (for doctors)”.

Salvete, studentes! — A form of greeting students at a meeting.

Solve, magistra (magister)! — A form of greeting a teacher at a meeting.

Sapere aude — “Dare to be wise”.

Scio me nihil scire — “I know that I know nothing” (Socrates).

Sic Deus pro nobis, quis contra nos? — “If God is with us, who can be against us?” (Vulgate, Romans 8:31)

Similia similibus curantur — “Like cures like” (Samuel Hahnemann, founder of homeopathy).

Situs viscerum inversus — “Inverse position of internal organs”.

Sol lucet omnibus — “The sun shines for everyone”.

Statim! — “Immediately! (Urgently!)”.

Status communis — “General state (of the patient)”.

Status localis — “Local state”.

Status naturalis — “Natural state”.

Status praesens aegroti — “The patient’s present condition”.

Suum cuique — “To each what he deserves”.

T

Tabula rasa — “Blank (scraped) board”. Ancient Greeks and Romans wrote on waxed plates with sharpened sticks. The text was easy to rub, and this fact led to the figurative meaning of this expression “A foolish man”.

Tarde venientibus ossa — “For those who come late, only the bones”.

Tempora mutantur et nos mutamur in illis — “The times are changed, and we are changed in them” (John Owen).

Terra incognita — “An unknown country”. This is the inscription on the ancient maps and terrestrial globes of unexplored areas. It also means “The unknown sphere of knowledge”.

Tres faciunt collegium — “Three makes a company”.

U

Ubi bene, ibi patria — “Where one feels good, there is one’s country”.

Ubi concordia, ibi victoria — “Where there is harmony, there is victory”.

Ubi dubium, ibi libertas — “Where there is doubt, there is freedom”.

Ubi fumus, ibi ignis — “Where there’s smoke, there’s fire”.

Usus est optimus magister — “Practice makes perfect”.

V

Vale, magister! (magistra) — A form of greeting a teacher by leave-taking.

Valéte, studéntes! — A form of greeting students by leave-taking.

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas — “Vanity of vanities and everything is vanity” (Vulgate, Ecclesiastes 1:2).

Vasa vana plurimum sonant — “Empty pots make the most noise”

Verba volant, scripta manent — “Words fly, written stays”.

Vivat Académia! — «Long live Academy!» This is a line from the students’ song, besides.

Vis medicatrix naturae — “Nature’s salutary power”.

Vox populi, vox Dei — “The voice of the people is the voice of God.”

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. **Arnaudov G.D.** Teminologia Medica Polyglota (Latinum-Русский-English-Francais-Deutsch) – Editio Medicina et Physcultura. – Sofia, Bulgaria, 1981. – 1000 p.

2. **Hornby A.S.** Advanced Learner’s Dictionary. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1995.

3. **Terminologia Anatomica.** Международная анатомическая номенклатура. – Москва: «Медицина». – 2003.

4. **Англо-русский биологический словарь.** Ок. 70 000 терминов. – 7-е изд., стереотип. / О.И. Чибисова и др. – М.: РУССО, 2000. – 736 с.

5. **Англо-русский медицинский словарь.** Ок. 70 000 терминов. / Акжигитов Г.Н., Бешомович М.С., Чикорин А.К. – 3-е изд., исп. – М.: РУССО, 1996. – 608 с.

6. **Англо-русский медицинский энциклопедический словарь:** Гл. ред. А.Г. Чучалин, науч. ред. Э.Г. Улумбеков, О.К. Поздеев – М.: ГЭОТАР, 1995. – 717 с.

7. **Бахрушина Л.А.** Частотный латинско-русский словарь анатомических терминов. – М.: ММСИ. – 1999.

8. **Большой русско-английский медицинский словарь.** Ок. 70000 терминов. – М.: РУССО, 2001. – 704 с.

9. **В.В. Жура, Ж.С. Мартинсон, Н.В. Протопопова, Н.В. Черватюк.** Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии для иностранных студентов (на английском языке). – Волгоград: ВолГМУ. – 2004. – 328 с.

10. **Знаменская С.В., Берко З.В.** Учебный латинско-русско-английский словарь анатомических терминов. – Ставрополь. Изд-во: СтГМА. – 2004. – 56 с.

11. **Костромина Т.А.** Язык медицины как средство профессионального общения. Учебное пособие по дисциплине «Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии» для иностранных студентов лечебного факультета (на английском языке). Издание 2-е, дополненное. – Курск: КГМУ. – 2004. – 184 с.

12. **Чернявский М.Н.** Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии: Учебник. – М.: Медицина, 2004. – 448 с.

**В учебном пособии использованы материалы учебника
«Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии»
М. Н. Чернявского**

CONTENTS

| | |
|--|-----|
| THE INTRODUCTION | 5 |
| BRIEF HISTORICAL BACKGROUND OF LATIN | 5 |
| OUTLINE OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY FORMATION | 7 |
| THE TERM | 8 |
| THE DEFINITION | 9 |
| TERMINOLOGY – SYSTEM OF TERMS | 9 |
| SUBSYSTEMS OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY | 10 |
| | |
| SECTION I. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY | 11 |
| | |
| UNIT 1. THE LATIN ALPHABET | 11 |
| UNIT 2. ACCENT | 23 |
| UNIT 3. THE NOUN | 30 |
| UNIT 4. THE ADJECTIVE | 40 |
| UNIT 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES | 48 |
| UNIT 6. SUBSTANTIVATION OF ADJECTIVES | 58 |
| UNIT 7. REVISION OV UNITS 3–6 | 64 |
| UNIT 8. CONTROL TESTS ON ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY | 66 |
| UNIT 9. THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS | 67 |
| UNIT 10. THE THIRD DECLENSION. MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION | 72 |
| UNIT 11. FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION | 79 |
| UNIT 12. NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION | 84 |
| UNIT 13. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION | 88 |
| UNIT 14. REVISION OF UNITS 9–13 | 92 |
| UNIT 15. THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS | 93 |
| UNIT 16. SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS OF THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL. BASIC ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE PNA | 99 |
| UNIT 17. REVISION OF UNITS 14–16 | 104 |
| UNIT 18. THE FINAL TESTS ON ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY | 106 |
| | |
| SECTION II. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY | 108 |
| | |
| UNIT 1. CLINICAL TERMS. SUFFIXATION. PREFIXATION | 108 |
| UNIT 2. COMPOUND WORDS | 117 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| UNIT 3. GREEK SUFFIXES IN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY | 123 |
| UNIT 4. COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING TISSURES, ORGANS, SEX, AGE, SECRETION. COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING FUNCTIONAL AND PATHOLOGICAL DISODERS | 128 |
| UNIT 5. COMBINING FORMS DESIGNATING VARIOUS PROPERTIES, QUALITIES AND RELATIONS | 134 |
| UNIT 6. REVISION OF UNITS 1–5 | 137 |
| UNIT 7. THE FINAL TESTS ON THE CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY | 138 |
| | |
| SECTION III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY..... | 142 |
| | |
| UNIT 1. DRUG NAMES, STANDARDS..... | 143 |
| UNIT 2. MOST COMMON PRESCRIPTION FORMULAS | 149 |
| UNIT 3. PRESCRIPTION..... | 151 |
| UNIT 4. CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE. NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS. NAMES OF ACIDS | 158 |
| UNIT 5. CHEMICAL NOMENCLATURE. OXIDE AND SALT NAMES..... | 164 |
| UNIT 6. TASKS FOR INDEPENDENT WORK..... | 167 |
| UNIT 7. COMMON ABBREVIATIONS IN PRESCRIPTION. CHEMICAL COMBINING FORMS | 170 |
| UNIT 8. REVISION | 178 |
| UNIT 9. THE FINAL TESTS ON PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY..... | 185 |
| UNIT 10. THE FINAL TESTS ON LATIN AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY | 199 |
| | |
| ENGLISH-LATIN-RUSSIAN GLOSSARY | 242 |
| LATIN-ENGLISH-RUSSIAN GLOSSARY | 285 |
| LATIN-ENGLISH CLINICAL COMBINING FORMS | 293 |
| ENGLISH-LATIN CLINICAL COMBINING FORMS | 302 |
| | |
| APPENDIX. LATIN PROVERBS, QUOTATIONS AND MEDICAL PHRASES | 310 |
| | |
| BIBLIOGRAPHY | 6 |

LATIN AND MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY
Textbook for the Foreign Medical Students of the English Medium

Znamenskaya S. V., Pigaleva I. R., Znamenskaya I. A.

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК
И МЕДИЦИНСКАЯ ТЕРМИНОЛОГИЯ
Учебное пособие
для иностранных студентов-медиков англоязычного отделения

Знаменская С. В., Пигалева И. Р., Знаменская И. А.

Подписано в печать 18.04.2017 г.
Формат 60x84 ¹/₁₆. Бумага офсетная. Печать офсетная.
Гарнитура Times New Roman. Усл. печ. л. 18,36.
Заказ № 207. Тираж 250 экз.

**Ставропольский государственный медицинский университет,
355017, г. Ставрополь, ул. Мира, 310.**